

# Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0 Complete Manual

The leading cloud file storage, sharing, collaboration, backup & FTP hosting service









File server, online backup, FTP / email / web hosting & more..

Copyright © 2003-2010 Drive Headquarters. All rights reserved.

# **Table of Contents**

1. ABOUT DRIVEHQ	8
<b>1.1 About Cloud Storage Service Version 5.0</b> 9         1.1.1 DriveHQ main services       9         1.1.2 DriveHQ Service Advantages       9	8
2. DRIVEHQ.COM WEB-BASED SERVICES AND FEATURES	0
2.1 DriveHQ.com Website Features Summary 10	0
<b>2.2 DriveHQ Service Sign-up</b> 1         2.2.1 Trouble Shooting Account Activation Problem       1	<b>1</b> 1
3. DRIVEHQ.COM ONLINE STORAGE FEATURES	2
3.1 The "My Storage" page 12	2
3.2. Upload Files	3
<b>3.3 Download Files</b> 14         3.3.1 Zip Download Multiple Files / Folders       14	
3.4 Change folder view type	5
<b>3.5 Preview Files - the "Show File" page</b> 10         3.5.1 Displaying a photo (with online photo editing features)       17         3.5.2 Preview Text / HTML Files:       18         3.5.3 Playing music files online.       20	7 8
3.6 Direct Editing of remote MS Office Document files	1
3.7 Folders of image files (Photo Albums) 2.	3
3.8 Search Folders and Files:	4
<b>3.9 Customize Folder / Storage Options</b> 243.9.1 Show / Hide Folder Tree:203.9.2 Customize the "Show Folder" page.20	6
4. ONLINE FILE / FOLDER SHARING	8
4.1 Regular File Sharing	8

4.1.1 Share permission levels	33
4.1.2 Share Change Notifications	
4.1.3 About Share Notification Email	
	55
4.2. Access a shared folder	36
4.3 Share folders to contact groups	37
4.3.1 The benefits of sharing a folder to a contact group(s)	
Sharing a folder to a contact group is equivalent to sharing it to all contacts in the contact	
group. However, it has some advantages:	
4.4. Edit / Manage Existing Shares	40
T.T. Eur / Manage Existing Shares	···· TU
4.5 Accessing a shared folder by clicking on the "Share Link" without logon	41
4.5.1 Access a shared folder with Full-Access right	42
4.6 Comment / Rate a shared folder	43
5. PUBLISH FOLDERS OR WEBSITE	44
5.1 What is Publish? (Create direct file links or publicly accessible websites)	
5.1.1 Only Paid Users or True users can publish on DriveHQ.com	45
5.2 Publish Folders / Files	45
5.3 Manage / Modify / Delete an Existing Publish	47
5.3.1 The Publish URLs (direct links) for a published folder and files in it	
5.3.2 Comment and Rate	
5.4 Publish Website	50
5.4.1 Activate, disable and re-enable your website	50
5.4.2 Upload / edit your website files & the default home page file	
5.4.3 Custom Domain Website Hosting Service	52
6. DRIVEHQ GROUP ACCOUNT SERVICE	54
6.1 Upgrade to a group account for free	54
6.2 The "Group Admin" features	58
6.2.1 Create a new sub-user	
6.2.2 Group storage allocation considerations	59
6.2.3 Group User Types:	
6.2.4 Create Sub-groups	
6.3 Group Folder Sharing and Permissions	61
with the second states with the states with the second states states states with the second states with the second	

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

6.4 Real Business Scenario	65
6.5 More Group Admin Features	66
6.6 Forcing Sub-users to only Use Folders Shared by Group Admin	67
6.7 Group Account Settings and Group Account Balance	67
6.8 Downgrade Group Account to a Standalone Account	
7. ACCOUNT AND SUBSCRIPTIONS	70
7.1 Sign up a Free Account (or Account Registration)	
7.2 Account Types	
7.2.1 Free Account	
7.2.2 True Account	
7.2.3 Premium Account (or Paid Account)	
7.2.4 Comparison of free service and premium service	
7.3 View or Edit Account Details	
7.3.1 Change password / username.	
7.3.2 View Account Balances	
7.3.3 Account Options Page	
7.3.4 Website Customization – customized logo and logon page	
7.4 DriveHQ Service Subscription	
7.4.1 Order DriveHQ Storage Subscription or Group User Licenses	
7.4.2 Monthly Subscription Service and Annual Subscription Service	
7.4.3 Upgrade to a higher level service plan	80
7.4.4 Change monthly subscription to annual subscription	80
7.4.5 Service Cancelation or Downgrade	80
7.5 Service Billing, Payment and Deposit	
7.5.1 Monthly service billing date	
7.5.2 Partial-month service charge	
7.5.3 Pay for the service due and payment methods	
7.5.4 Work around Transaction Problems	
7.5.6 Forgot to pay on time, past-due account	
7.5.7 Automatic service payment	
7.6 Transaction History	86
7.6.1 Print Online Invoice	
8. DRIVEHQ FTP SERVER HOSTING SERVICE	

8.1. Introduction to DriveHQ FTP Server Hosting Service	
8.1.2 DriveHQ FTP Server Name, Logon Info and Directory Info	88
8.1.3 Free FTP Service Restrictions	
8.2 Connect DriveHQ FTP Server using Windows Explorer	
8.3. Configure FTP client software to connect DriveHQ FTP server	
8.4 Access Shared Folders through FTP	
8.5 Create FTP sub-accounts and manage sub-accounts online:	
8.6 Anonymous FTP logon	
8.7 Using MS Office with DriveHQ FTP	
8.8 DriveHQ FTP Service usage scenarios	103
9. DRIVEHQ ONLINE BACKUP	104
9.1 The Advantages of Offsite / Remote Backup over Local Backup	
9.2 DriveHQ Online Backup main features	104
9.3 Get Started with DriveHQ Online Backup	105
9.3.1. Download DriveHQ Online Backup client software from the location:	
9.3.2 Install DriveHQ Online Backup on your computer	
9.3.3 Trouble shoot DriveHQ Online Backup installer problems	
9.3.4 Start DriveHQ Online Backup	
9.4. Create Backup Task(s)	108
9.4.1. Create Multiple Backup Tasks	
9.5. Create a backup task using Quick Backup	110
9.6. Create an Advanced Backup Task	
9.6.1 What files / folders should you back up?	113
9.6.2 Set the backup schedule and save the backup task	
9.6.3 Exclude certain files / folders from the backup source folder	
9.6.4 Online Backup with Data Encryption	
9.7 Manage Existing Backup Tasks	118
9.7.1 Manage Tasks – Display the backup task list	119
9.7.2 Delete a Backup Task	
9.7.3 Edit / modify a backup task	
9.7.4 Delete un-used files on server:	
9.7.5 Show Backup Progress Window	121

9.8 Email / Database Backup	
9.9 Restore Files / Folders	127
9.9.1 Restore all files / folders	128
9.9.2 Restore the selected files / folders	
9.9.3 Restore older version files	
9.10 DriveHQ Online Backup Options	
9.11. Advanced features and technical information	141
9.11.1. Run as Windows (NT) Service:	
9.11.2. Backup Network-mapped Drives	
9.11.3 Backup multiple computers using the same DriveHQ account	
9.11.4 Migrate a Backup Task to a Different Computer	
9.11.5 More efficient way of migrating a backup task	
9.12 Group Backup for Businesses	
9.13 Access / Restore Files backed up by DriveHQ Online Backup using DriveHQ.	com
website	
9.14. DriveHQ Online Backup Trouble-shooting Guide	
10. DRIVEHQ FILEMANAGER	162
10.1. Advantages of DriveHQ FileManager	
10.2. DriveHQ FileManager features:	
10.3 Get Started with DriveHQ FileManager	
10.3.1: Download DriveHQ FileManager installer from the URL	
10.3.2. Install DriveHQ FileManager on your computer	
10.3.3. Start DriveHQ FileManager	
10.4. Using DriveHQ FileManager for Online Storage	
Edit a Synchronization Task	
1. Folder Synchronization among multiple PCs and Multiple DriveHQ users	
11. DRIVEHQ EMAIL HOSTING SERVICE	205
11. DRIVEHQ EMAIL HOSTING SERVICE 11.1 DriveHQ Email Service is better than other free email services	
	206

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

11.4 Configure Microsoft Outlook for DriveHQ Email Service	
11.5 Configure Eudora for DriveHQ Email Service	
11.6 Configure Lotus Notes for DriveHQ Email Service	
11.7 Configure your private domain email addresses	222
11.9 DriveHQ Webmail	
11.10 DriveHQ Advanced Email Options	
11.10.1. Background Info about Email Protocols	
IMAP Service (Remote email folders)	
11.11. DriveHQ Web-based Address Book / Contacts	
11.11.1. Create Contact Groups	
11.11.2. Create contacts	
11.11.3. Batch creating contacts, importing contacts from Outlook / Gmail	
12. DRIVEHQ EMAIL MANAGER (EMAIL BACKUP)	235
12.1 DriveHQ Email Manager Advantages	
12.2 DriveHQ EmailManager (Email Backup Service) Pricing	
12.3 Get started with DriveHQ EmailManager	
12.3.1 Install DriveHQ EmailManager client software	
12.3.2 Logon DriveHQ EmailManager	
Launch DriveHQ EmailManager and Logon (it could take 1-2 minutes dep number of emails in your account.), you will see the Application's Main Scr amount of the second seco	reen. (See the
screenshot below). DriveHQ Email Manager's main screen consists of three Show/Hide Email Panes:	
Show/Hide Task Management Pane for Email Transfer	
12.4 Manage local emails and folders	
1. Navigate through local emails and folders	
2. Create new local email folders	
3. Rename local email folders	
4. Copy / Paste local emails and folders	
5. Delete local emails and folders	
6. Create a new sub folder	
7. Rename a new sub folder	
8. Cut / copy & paste a sub folder	
9. Delete a sub folder	
10. Drag / drop a sub folder	

12.5 Manage online emails and folders	245
12.5.1 Your default DriveHQ email account	
12.5.2 Manage Online Emails and Folders	
1. Navigate through online emails and folders	
2. Create new online email folders	
3. Rename online email folders	
4. Delete online emails and folders	
5. Browse emails online	247
12.6 Transferring emails, contacts and folders (mailboxes)	
1. Upload emails, contacts and folders	
2. Download emails, contacts and folders.	
3. Monitor, stop, resume, and resume transfer tasks.	248
12.7 Automatic email backup	248
12.7.1 Create email backup task	249
12.7.2 Manage or Backup Multiple Email Accounts / Emails on Multiple PCs	251
12.7.3 Manage email backup task	252
12.7.3 Restore emails and email folders	252
12.8 DriveHQ EmailManager Settings, Options and Subscription	254
13. SUPPORT FOR MAC, INCL. MACBOOK, IPAD AND IPHONES, ETC	256
13. SUPPORT FOR MAC, INCL. MACBOOK, IPAD AND IPHONES, ETC 13.1. Services and features that work on both Mac and Windows	
	256
13.1. Services and features that work on both Mac and Windows	256 256
<ul> <li>13.1. Services and features that work on both Mac and Windows</li> <li>13.2 DriveHQ Online Backup software for Mac</li> <li>13.3. DriveHQ FileManager Alternatives on Mac and other OS platforms</li> </ul>	256 256 257
<ul><li>13.1. Services and features that work on both Mac and Windows</li><li>13.2 DriveHQ Online Backup software for Mac</li></ul>	256 256 257
<ul> <li>13.1. Services and features that work on both Mac and Windows</li> <li>13.2 DriveHQ Online Backup software for Mac</li> <li>13.3. DriveHQ FileManager Alternatives on Mac and other OS platforms</li> </ul>	256 256 257 259
<ul> <li>13.1. Services and features that work on both Mac and Windows</li> <li>13.2 DriveHQ Online Backup software for Mac</li> <li>13.3. DriveHQ FileManager Alternatives on Mac and other OS platforms</li> <li>13.4 SUPPORT FOR OTHER DEVICES / OS PLATFORMS</li> </ul>	256 256 257 259 259
<ul> <li>13.1. Services and features that work on both Mac and Windows</li> <li>13.2 DriveHQ Online Backup software for Mac</li></ul>	256 256 257 259 259 259
<ul> <li>13.1. Services and features that work on both Mac and Windows</li> <li>13.2 DriveHQ Online Backup software for Mac</li> <li>13.3. DriveHQ FileManager Alternatives on Mac and other OS platforms</li> <li>13.4 SUPPORT FOR OTHER DEVICES / OS PLATFORMS</li> <li>15. ENTERPRISE SERVICE AND PRIVATE LABEL SERVICE</li> <li>15.1 About DriveHQ Enterprise Service</li></ul>	256 256 257 259 259 259 259 261

# 1. About DriveHQ

Based in the Silicon Valley, Drive Headquarters is the leading provider of Online Storage, Backup, Sharing, Collaboration and FTP / Email / File Server Hosting services. Founded in 2003, DriveHQ is one of the first few companies offering cloud based services. Since then, DriveHQ has developed a broad range of high-end technologies, services and software applications designed to create value and save cost for small businesses and high-end users.

DriveHQ cloud system is now at version 5.0 with over 1 million registered customers, many of them business customers. With our service, business users can automatically backup data from anywhere without the need to carry a backup device; they can use DriveHQ online sharing and FTP service to share any size files / folders with people in different locations. Small businesses can host file servers, backup servers, FTP servers and email servers on DriveHQ.com. Consumers can use DriveHQ service to share photos, documents with friends or family members; automatically backup PC data; access files remotely, etc.

Tens of thousands of companies from many different countries have embraced DriveHQ Online Storage & Sharing, Online Backup, FTP / Email / File Server Hosting services as a costeffective and reliable alternative to their in-house solutions. Among these customers are: tens of thousands of small businesses, professional content creators, accounting firms, law firms, small clinics and real estate / insurance agents; hundreds of educational institutes, NPOs, government offices; and a few giant multi-national corporations.

### 1.1 About Cloud Storage Service Version 5.0

DriveHQ offers <u>a complete set of Online Storage Services / Cloud Server Hosting Services</u> to businesses and consumers.

#### 1.1.1 DriveHQ main services

• Online Storage Service with Group Account Support: Users can store files on DriveHQ.com and access them from anywhere, anytime. With DriveHQ FileManager, FTP client software or DriveHQ.com website, managing files on DriveHQ.com is a matter of drag and drop.

DriveHQ also supports groups and sub-groups; with 2-level group account service, DriveHQ service can easily scale to support companies with over 10,000 employees!

• Online Sharing and Group Collaboration Service: Users can easily share files on DriveHQ.com. Files can be shared with colleagues or clients; different

permissions can be set for different shared folders. Folders shared to you by other users can be accessed with your own account logon.

- **Online / Offsite Backup Service:** Businesses and consumers can easily backup important documents to DriveHQ secure data center using DriveHQ Online Backup software. No need to purchase any expensive backup hardware and software. Real-time and scheduled backup is supported; encryption and version control are also supported.
- **FTP Server Hosting Service:** DriveHQ FTP service is seamlessly integrated with DriveHQ.com cloud storage service. It supports any FTP client software. You don't need to buy FTP Server hardware and software; no need for a hosting service provider; our web-based system administration tool is straight-forward and requires no learning curve.
- Email Server Hosting Service: DriveHQ offers (private domain) email hosting service that is based on SMTP/POP3/IMAP/Webmail. It supports any email client applications. You don't need to buy Email Server hardware and software; no need for a hosting service provider; our web-based system administration tool is straight-forward and requires no learning curve.
- **Email Backup Service:** DriveHQ EmailManager is the first application that allows drag & drop backup your Outlook emails / contacts. It is far more efficient than PST file based email backup. It only uploads the new / changed emails and contacts. You never need to upload / download a huge PST file to backup / restore emails or contacts.

### **1.1.2 DriveHQ Service Advantages**

DriveHQ offers high-end cloud services & software to businesses:

- DriveHQ is your "one-stop shop" for all cloud storage related services;
- DriveHQ cloud service is extremely easy to use and easy to manage / maintain;
- Highly efficient with lots of advanced technologies;
- Ultimate security and privacy with high-end data center, SSL, encrypted folder and ACLbased access control system;
- Highly reliable data center and redundant infrastructure;
- State-of-the-art client software and powerful web-based features.

## 2. DriveHQ.com web-based services and features

DriveHQ services can be accessed with a web browser, DriveHQ client software or any FTP/email client software. For one-time users, DriveHQ website offers a convenient way to access almost all services and features. Drag and drop is supported via DriveHQ FTP service with Windows Explorer. It is not required to install DriveHQ client software. For long-term users, or for certain features such as automatic folder synchronization, automatic online file / email backup, upload / download very large files / folders, data encryption via encrypted folder, etc., DriveHQ client software offers far better user experience and is strongly recommended.

## 2.1 DriveHQ.com Website Features Summary

DriveHQ.com website has the following features: (no software required for these features)

- Online Storage.
  - Upload / download / access / manage files;
  - Batch file upload and zip download; drag and drop online files / folders;
  - Advanced options such as detail view, thumbnail view; file version history, file preview in web browser and direct editing remote MS office files using MS office applications.
- Online Folder / File Sharing.
  - Share a folder / file to other users using email addresses or DriveHQ usernames and set an access level.
  - Share a folder to different users with different levels of access rights
  - Access a shared folder by clicking on the link sent from the "Share Notification" email; or access a shared folder by logging on DriveHQ and visit the "DriveHQ Share" folder, which contains all folders shared to you.
- Online Folder / File Publishing:
  - Publish a folder / file and create static URLs / Publish URLs that can be directly linked from other websites / web pages, such as eBay, Facebook, etc.
- Static Website Hosting:
  - Upload static website files to the wwwhome folder. Your website can be accessed at:

http://USERNAME.drivehq.com/

- DriveHQ webmail feature:
  - Host private domain business emails on DriveHQ. Emails can be accessed via SMTP/POP3/IMAP and webmail.
  - Manage online address books. Can create group accounts and group shared address books.

- Drag and drop support without installing any client software:
  - o Using Windows Explorer, just enter: ftp://USERNAME:PASSWORD@ftp.drivehq.com/
- Group Account Administration
  - Upgrade to group account service for free;
  - Order more user licenses and storage space;
  - Create / add / edit / logon as / delete / disable sub-users; 4 types of sub-users are supported:
    - Group Administrators;
    - Sub-group administrators;
    - Regular group members;
    - Guest users.
  - Allocate (divide) storage space and download bytes among group members;
  - Create folders and then share different folders to different users / groups with different levels of access rights; share the same folder to different users / groups with different levels of access rights.

## 2.2 DriveHQ Service Sign-up

DriveHQ service can be setup immediately; it can be done using <u>www.drivehq.com</u> website or any DriveHQ client application.

Using the website, you can visit <u>www.drivehq.com</u> website, click on the "Sign up FREE" button. After you have entered the account info and click on "Free Sign Up", your account is immediately created; however, <u>usually the account needs to be activated</u>. An automatic activation email is sent to the registered email address. After you receive the activation email, you can click on the "Activate" link to activate your account. The same DriveHQ account can be used for all DriveHQ services, features and software.

### 2.2.1 Trouble Shooting Account Activation Problem

#### If you don't receive the activation email in 20 minutes:

- Please check if the email is filtered into your junk / bulk / trash mail folder.
- If still no activation email, then you need to check if your email server has filtered DriveHQ email. You can contact your system administrator in your company or your ISP not to block / filter DriveHQ emails; you can also try a different email address. Just try to logon with the un-activated username / password, you can resend the activation email, or change to a different email address.

- You can also email your username to DriveHQ support and we can manually activate your account. If a new account is not activated in 2 days, it will be automatically deleted. If so, you can easily sign up again

## 3. DriveHQ.com Online Storage Features

## 3.1 The "My Storage" page

Once you have a DriveHQ account, you can logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u> using your username and password. By default, it will go to the "My Storage" page, as shown below:



DriveHQ.com "My Storage" page

The "My Storage" page is very similar to Windows Explorer.

**On the left-hand side, it displays the Folder Tree**, which makes it very easy to navigate all folders in your account as well as access all folders shared to you by other users. The root folder "DriveHQ Root" is not a real folder. It is a virtual folder, which contains two other virtual folders: "My Storage" and "DriveHQ Share". All folders / files in "My Storage" virtual folder belong to the current logon user account, which it always has full access.

The folders in "DriveHQ Share" virtual folder are folders shared to you by other DriveHQ members. Other users may share folders to you by entering your username / email address in the "Share-to" list. The shared folder permission is determined by the user who shared the folder to you. A folder can be shared to you with the following access rights:

- Thumbnail / List view only
- Download / Read Only
- Upload / Add
- Full Access

More detailed info about shared folder is available in the "DriveHQ Online File Sharing" section.

**On the right-hand side, it displays the folder contents.** You can edit folder / file name; click on a folder icon enter the folder; or click on a File icon to open the ShowFile page. You can also search a file by clicking on the Search button, change the folder view to "Detail View" or "Thumbnail View", etc.

#### On top of the page below the main tabs, you can see a Toolbar.

The following features available in the Toolbar:

Up:	Go to the up-level folder (i.e. parent folder);
Upload:	Upload files to the folder;
Download:	Download the selected file (can download files one by one only);
Zip Download	*: Zip the selected multiple files / folders into a zip file and download it.
	* Zip Download feature is available to DriveHQ Paid Members only.
Share:	Share the selected folder / file to other users / groups;
Publish*:	Publish the selected folder / file to create static links (or publish URLs);
	* Publish feature is available to Paid Members or True Members only
New Folder:	Create a new online folder in the current folder;
New File:	Create a new online file in the current folder;
Copy:	Copy the selected folders / files to DriveHQ.com clipboard; you can then enter a
	new folder and click on Paste to make a new copy of the folders / files.
Cut:	Cut the selected folders / files to DriveHQ.com clipboard; you can then enter a
	new folder and click on Paste to move the folders / files to the new folder.
Delete:	Delete the selected folders / files.
Paste:	Copy / move the folders / files in DriveHQ.com clipboard to the current folder
	location.
Rate:	You can comment or rate a published folder or a folder shared to you.
Subscribe:	Click on it if you need to order DriveHQ paid subscription.

Drag and drop upload / download is not supported on DriveHQ.com website. You can use DriveHQ FileManager client software or other FTP client software, incl. Windows Explorer for drag and drop.

### **3.2. Upload Files**

From "My Storage" page, navigate to the destination folder, or create a new folder where you want the files uploaded to. Then click on the "Upload" button in the Toolbar, it will pop up the "Upload Files" page as follows:

📌	B at once. Upload Files Order More Storage
pload to: )	
Batch Upload (using Flash)	Basic Upload Drag & Drop Upload (using software)
🗿 add) 🥥 remove	loaded(0 files - 0 Bytes) / total(0 files - 0 Bytes) (

From the upload files page, users can upload local files to online storage by three ways.

- Batch Upload (using Flash): you can select and upload maximum 20 files or 2 GB at once.
- Basic Upload: you should select local files one by one and upload maximum 6 files at once. Dependent on your file size, it might take some time to finish uploading.
- Drag & Drop Upload (using software): By using DriveHQ FileManager client software, you (paid members) can drag & drop local files to remote file server without size, quantity, time limitations.

The web-based file upload is designed to upload only a few small files. It is very inefficient if you need to upload many files or need to upload folders. It is also less reliable if you need to upload a very large file.

# DriveHQ FileManager, DriveHQ Online Backup or FTP client software should be used to upload many files, upload folders, or upload very large files.

You can find links to DriveHQ FileManager and DriveHQ Online Backup on the right-hand side.

## **3.3 Download Files**

In the "My Storage" page, you can navigate to any folders, click on it to enter the ShowFolder page. Select the file (i.e. check the checkbox) you want to download, click on "Download" in the toolbar.

**Please note web browsers can only download files one by one.** So you should select one file only. You also should not check any folders. Folders cannot be downloaded by a web browser.

### 3.3.1 Zip Download Multiple Files / Folders

If you have a paid account, then you can use the "Zip Download" button to zip multiple files and folders into a single zip file and then download the zip file.

Zip Download is a very convenient way for you to download multiple files and folders at once. However, "Zip Download" requires a lot of server resources as the server must zip the files / folders on the fly. Therefore, zip download should only be used to download multiple small files / folders. If you need to download some very large files / folders (e.g. over 100MB), DriveHQ FileManager or DriveHQ FTP is always the best solution.

## 3.4 Change folder view type

In the "My Storage" page or "Show Folder" page, you can click on the View button to change folder view type. Please see the screenshot below:

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

	ne the on	line storage				My Storage	Share	P	ublish	My Account			
lcome <u>t</u>	est driveh	g! <u>Go back</u>	to older version										
6	2	2	4	Ø	G	C C				× 🗈	P	, S	
	Upload Q Root	Download	Zip Download	Share	Publish	New Folder	New File	Сору	Cut De	elete Paste	Rate	Upgrade	_
	Q ROOT Storage		Folder Path: \	100 mar 100 m	es\ earch	🐣 Download Al	I II Vie	w ś	Doption	📮 Slide	Show	Play Music	
	My Docume	ents						ail View		My Picture		O ridy ridble	_
- 63	My Pictures PublicFolde www.home				¥.			imbnail \				ARDIN	
Z Driv	veHQ Shar Profile	e		1	1			4					
				Samp	ol1.jpg			Sampl	2.jpg			Sampl3.jpg	
										My Picture	25		
			4 Files and F	olders,	Folder Siz	e: 2.95 MB, Free	Space: 102	0 MB					

By default, folders are displayed as Thumbnail View. You can change it to Detail View as follows:

Redefine the online storage	My Storage Share	Publish My Account			
lcome test drivehg! Go back to older version					
2 2 2 4 9 0	ā 🛛 🖆 🗋 🗸	🗅 🔏 🗙 🗋	9 🛒		
p Upload Download Zip Download Share Put	blish New Folder New File	Copy Cut Delete Paste	Rate Upgrade		
DriveHQ Roc Folder Path: \My Pictures\					
🚰 My Stora 🛛 🛅 Select 🔍 Search 🖉 Downlo	oad All 🛛 🗾 View 🖓 Optio	n 📮 Slide Show 🕟 Play	/ Music	💠 💠 Go to	»: <mark>1/1</mark>
My Do		My Pictures			
		Action	Create Time	Modify Time	Size
- 🕝 Public 🖌 🔲 🛐 SamplePhoto1.jpg		A	7/2/2010 2:28:43 PM	7/2/2010 2:28:43 PM	953 KB
wwwh		A	7/2/2010 2:28:43 PM	7/2/2010 2:28:43 PM	682 KB
My Profile		ß	7/2/2010 2:28:43 PM	7/2/2010 2:28:43 PM	485 KB
SamplePhoto4.jpg		A	7/2/2010 2:28:43 PM	7/2/2010 2:28:43 PM	898 KB

You can see the folder / file name, size, create time and last modify time in the Detail View. You can also sort files / folders by clicking on the column name.

## 3.5 Preview Files - the "Show File" page

Clicking on a file in the "Show Folder" page or "My Storage" page, it goes to the "Show File" page. DriveHQ.com supports preview of image files, text / HTML files, music files, video files. Dependent on the browser type and availability of plug-ins, it might also support some other file types. Below are a few examples of DriveHQ "Show File page" displaying different file types.

### 3.5.1 Displaying a photo (with online photo editing features)

Below is the "Photo Preview" page. Please pay attention to the photo specific options: Rotate and Effects (and slideshow).



Preview a photo in DriveHQ.com website

Click on "Rotate" button, it will popup the "Rotate image" page:

Please select a	rotation and click on the "	Rotate" button.
ORotate 90 Right	O Rotate 180	O Rotate 90 Left
	Rotate Cancel	

You can then select a rotation type and click on Rotate to finish rotating the image.

### 3.5.2 Preview Text / HTML Files:

Click on a text / HTML file, it will open the "Show File" page to preview the text file:

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

	fine the onli	uarter				My Storad	share		ublish		×.			
	10 No 1000 NO					My Storag	ge   Snare	1 1	ublish	јмуа	ccount )			
lcome	1		to older version	100			1000		2400		10000	V	22	
6	<u> </u>	2	<b>4</b>	3	6				20	×		P	a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a	
0			Zip Download	Share	Publish	New Folde	r New File	Сору	Cut	Delete	Paste	Rate	Upgrade	
	Path: \My Doc					<b>•</b>								
-") R	lotate 👌	Effect	Property	′	Slide Sho									
							Sample '	Text						
				This is	a sample	document.						~		
							cuments online	⊇.						
						1L files, you o	an edit and							
				previe	ew online.									
												~		
							Sample Te	ext				~		
							Sample Te					8		
							Sample Te Download (1					2		
						Loundh ME 1	Download (1	38 B)		11		v		
						Launch MS \		38 B)	le Direc	tly		~		

The "Show File" page displaying a text file

To edit the text / HTML file, click on the "Property" button, it will popup the edit text page:

File Name:	SampleText.txt							
(Max 256 chars)	Note: Don't use incorrect extension! Cannot contain characters like: { / \ " '  *? <> } etc.							
More Info								
Text/HTML File	Content:							
This is a sample	document.							
preview online.								
	N 100							

### 3.5.3 Playing music files online

From the ShowFolder or My Storage page, click on a music file, dependent on the music file type and availability of music player plug-in, it will starts playing the music file.

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

		quarter		ŗ	og out   All S	ervices   Featur	es & Plans   El	nterprise :	ervice	Partnersh	np   Help		
Redet	ine the on	line storage	ř			My Storage	Share	Y P	ublish	MyA	ccount		
elcome	test driveh	ig! <u>Go back</u>	to older version										
1)			4	3		đ	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	X	×	6		Т
Up	Upload	Download	Zip Download	Share	Publish	New Folder	New File	Сору	Cut	Delete	Paste	Rate	Upgrade
older Pa	ath: \My M	usic\SampleM	lusic.mid										
D Ro	otate	巖 Effect	Property	/ 🖵	Slide Show	/ 🛞 Hist	ory						
						Sa	ample M	l <mark>usi</mark> c					
							3000	(	) _0	-			
						Song: DF		0	0:23 / 00	:45			
							Full Scree	<u>en</u>					
							Sample Mu	sic					
							Download (1	KB)					
					Ш								
ne										nternet		•	100% -

## 3.6 Direct Editing of remote MS Office Document files

If you have MS Office installed on your PC, then you can directly edit remote MS office files on DriveHQ.com. From the "Show Folder" page, click on an MS Office file, e.g. a Word Document TestMSWord.docs, it goes to the "Show File" page as shown below.

# **Drive Headquarters**™

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Driv	e Head	lquarter	S™.	Ĺ	og out   All S	ervices   Featu	res & Plans	Enterprise	Service	Partners	hip   Help		
Red	efine the or	nline storage			_	My Storage	Share	F	ublish	My A	ccount		
Velcome	e <u>test_drive</u> l	ng! <u>Go back</u>	to older version										
Û	2		4	Ø		<b>i</b>			X	×	Ē.	9	Ħ
Up	Upload	Download	Zip Download	Share	Publish	New Folder	New File	Сору	Cut	Delete	Paste	Rate	Upgrade
Folder	Path: \My D	ocuments\Te	stMSWord.docx										
n Ca	Rotate	瓣 Effect	Property		Slide Show	v 🛞 Hist	tory						
							TestMSWord	l.docx					
						Launch MS W	Download (		ile Dire	ctly			
<					Ш								į.
one									<b>e</b>	Internet		۲	100% •

Click on the "Launch MS Word to Edit Remote File Directly", it will automatically open MS word to edit the file as shown below:



After finished, you can simply click on Save or Save As to save the changes.

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0



The technology uses WebDAV and advanced scripting, which requires MS office to be installed on the local PC; also the web browser must be Microsoft Internet Explorer.

The technology has its inherent weakness and may not always work reliably. For better and more general "direct editing of remote files" support, please install DriveHQ FileManager client software. You can double click on a remote file in DriveHQ FileManager to open and edit it. After finished editing, just save the file and it will be saved in a local cache and then automatically synchronized to DriveHQ remote storage.

## 3.7 Folders of image files (Photo Albums)

When you have a folder containing mostly images files, you can click on the Slideshow button to play a slideshow of the images. See below.

Select	Q Search	📥 Download All	📰 View	🍪 Option	💭 Slide Show	€ Play Music	\$\Phi\$ Go to: 1/1
		830 Stoward		alo. CA 04085	Eax: 408 510 674	Q	
					, Fax: 408-519-674 izDev@DriveHQ.co		



It will open a slideshow window as shown below:

## 3.8 Search Folders and Files:

In the ShowFolder page, click on the Search button in the small toolbar as shown below:



It will open a search files / folders page as shown below.

Search files in \	My Pictures				
ile name contains:	sample				
ile size: minimum:		мв	maximum:		мв
ast modify time: ifter:			before:		
	(mm/dd/yyyy)			(mm/dd/yyyy)	
	Search		Cancel		

Type in the search criteria, then click on Search, it will display the search result page:

Redefine the online storage	My Storage Sha		My Account
lelcome test driveng! Go back to older version			
		-   🗅 📈	× 🗈 🔍
	Share Publish   New Folder New File	Copy Cut E	Delete Paste Rate U
Folder Path: \My Pictures\ i Gelect i Q Search A Download	All 📑 View 🎲 Option 🔲 S	lide Show 🕞 Play	y Music
	My Pic		
Name	In Folder	Action	Create Time
SamplePhoto1.jpg	\My Pictures\SamplePhoto1.jpg	ß	7/2/2010 2:28:43 PM
3 SamplePhoto2.ipg	\My Pictures\SamplePhoto2.jpg	B	7/2/2010 2:28:43 PM
SamplePhoto3.jpg	\My Pictures\SamplePhoto3.jpg	B	7/2/2010 2:28:43 PM
SamplePhoto4.jpg	\My Pictures\SamplePhoto4.jpg	æ	7/2/2010 2:28:43 PM
	My Pic	tures	
			Pa
Files and Folders, Folder Size: 2.95 MB, Fre	e Space: 1020 MB		
	ш		>

## 3.9 Customize Folder / Storage Options

### 3.9.1 Show / Hide Folder Tree:

By default, the system displays the folder tree in My Storage page and ShowFolder pages. You can hide the Folder Tree easily as illustrated in the following screenshot:



About show / hide the Folder Tree

### 3.9.2 Customize the "Show Folder" page

In the small toolbar above Folder contents, click on Option  $\rightarrow$  Folder Option as shown below:

📄 Select	Q Search	📥 Download All	💶 View	🔅 Option	💭 Slide Sh	now 💽 I	Play Music
				Folder Opt	ion		

It will go to the Account Options / Folder Options page as shown below:

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Drive Headquart	Home   Enterprise Service	Partnership   Log out
Drive Headquart	Storage Backup FTP	Email
Velcome <u>test_drivehq</u> !		
Account Details	Folder Options Show Folder Tree	<u>My Storage</u>
Account Balance	⊙Yes ○No	
💿 Account Options	Thumbnail View & Detail View	
Que Customization	Thumbnail View Row Number: 3 Column Number: 5	
🔏 Group Account	O Detail View Row Number: 15	
🗹 Subscribe	Enable SSL for the whole website	
🔂 Deposit	Enable delete files to "Recycle Bin" Show hidden folders (e.g. old version history folders)	
J Transaction ► History	Enable file history/versioning Max versions to keep:	
Your account type is: True Account Upgrade to Paid Account) Refer Your Friends	Update Default Email Option	
<		>
24	😜 Internet	🔍 100% 🔸

You can set the following account preferences:

- Show / hide folder tree;
- Display "My Storage" and "Show Folder" pages using Detail View / Thumbnail View; Set the maximum number of rows and columns in ShowFolder page.
- "Enable SSL for the whole website": by default, DriveHQ uses SSL for account pages and transaction pages. For other pages, such as ShowFolder pages and ShowFile pages, it uses regular HTTP. In most cases, HTTP is secure enough for transferring regular files. Most of Internet traffic is HTTP anyway. However, for those users who need extra levels of security and privacy, you can set this option to make all pages use HTTPS/SSL. This option requires paid account.
- "Enable delete files to "Recycle Bin": by default, when you delete a file, it is immediately deleted. You can set this option to keep the deleted files in the "Recycle Bin" folder. You can manually empty the "Recycle Bin" folder, or it will be automatically emptied within 2 weeks. If you accidentally deleted a file(s), you can recover it from the "Recycle Bin" folder.
- "Show hidden folders": some folders / files are hidden, e.g. the old version files. You can configure it to display all hidden folders / files.
- "Enable file history / versioning": When this option is set, if you upload a file and if the same-name file already exists in the destination folder, then the old file will be kept as the

old version, and the new file is saved as the current version. This feature requires paid service subscription. You can set it to keep multiple file versions.

## 4. Online File / Folder Sharing

There are several ways to share files / folders on DriveHQ.com. <u>The easiest method is to share</u> <u>the same username / password</u>. This is a quick and "dirty" method. In certain cases, it works extremely well, esp. if security / privacy is not a concern.

If you need better security and privacy, DriveHQ has more regular ways of sharing folders / files.

## **4.1 Regular File Sharing**

From "My Storage" page or "Show Folder" page, select a folder (or file) and click on the Share button, see below:

Redefine the online s	torage			My Storage	Share	P	ublish	My Account	t )	
Velcome <u>test_driveha</u> ! <u>G</u>	io back to older v	ersion								
	🖞 🕌		Publish	New Folder	New File	Сору	Cut [	🗙 🗈 Delete Past	10,655	Upg
DriveHQ Root	Folder Path: \	<u> </u>								
My Storage My Documents My Music My Pictures Wy Pictures My Pictures My Profile	Select	Q Search	A Dow	nload All	I View	Option		Slide Show	v	ay Mu
										1

Select a folder and share it

After clicking on the Share button, it goes to the "Set Permission" Page, as shown below:

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Share to: Emails or DriveHQ usernames, separated by ";"	* Enter DriveHQ usernames or email addresses, or Select from Your Contacts
	Manage Your Contacts
	Send share change notification
Folder to Share:	\My Pictures\
Share Name:	My Pictures *
	must be unique; use only alphabet, `-' , '_' and space
Description:	My Pictures
	86
Permission Level:	Comment and rate

Share and Set permission page

Users can enter email addresses or DriveHQ usernames in the "Share to" field. (Separated by semicolons). You can also change the default "Share Name", "Description", "Permission Level".

In addition, there is another way to share your files / folders. From "Share" page, click on the Add button, see below:

e <u>test arivena</u> ! <u>(</u>	<u>So back to older version</u>				
anage Shares	List of Shared Folders		13	View Received	Comments
hare My Folder	Share Name Description	Share Key	Times Visited	Create Date	Hide Link
	My Pictures My Pictures	89051/llor4x58bekt	0	07/02/2010	Hide Link
sit Shares	Share Link:http://192.168.2.105/sh	aring/ShareLogon.aspx?	key=89051/llor4	4x58bekt 🗐	
hare Help	Add Delet	e	↓ 1 of 1	1/1 💌	

Add a folder and share it

After clicking on the Add button, it will go to "Select One Folder" page. Select a folder and click on the Select button, or click on the New Folder button to create a new share folder, see below:

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

come <u>test drivehq</u> ! <u>G</u>	io back to older version	
Manage Shares Share My Folder Visit Shares Share Help	1       Select One Folder →       2       Share with Friends →         New Folder       Select       Cancel         Prev Page       1 of 1       Next Page         Folder Path: \	
Upload, Download, Share Publish, Drag-n-drop.	My   Documents     My   My   Music     My   PublicFolder	
	Prev Page 1 of 1 Next Page  New Folder  Select  Cancel	

Select a folder and share it

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Drive Headquarters Redefine the online storage	TM Log out   All Services   Featu My Storage	e Share Publish My Accour
Welcome <u>test_drivehq</u> ! <u>Go back t</u>	o older version	
c	reate a New Folder	
Path: /		
Folder name:	y Share	
Folder Caption:		
Folder Description:	<	
Subm	Affiliate   About   Testimonials   Support   Online B	Jackup   FTP Hosting   Email Hosting
	Copyright © 2003-2010 Drive Headquarters. All r	rights reserved. 💌
<	ui,	> 😓 🦻 🕾 🧇 🔂 0 🗗 Zoom:100% →

Create a new folder and share it

After selecting a share folder, it will go to the "Share & Set permission" page, shown as below:

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Drive Headquar Redefine the online sto		Log out   All Services   Features & Plans   Enterprise Service   Partnership   Hel
Welcome <u>test_drivehq</u> ! <u>Go</u>	<u>back to older version</u>	
Manage Shares	1 Select One Fol	Ider   2 Share with Friends
Visit Shares	Share to: Emails or DriveHQ usernames, separated by ";"	* Enter DriveHQ usernames or email addresses, or
Share Help		Select from Your Contacts Manage Your Contacts
	Folder to Share:	Send share change notification
The ultimate software for	Share Name:	My Music *
managing online files		must be unique; use only alphabet, '-' , '_' and space
	Description:	My Music
	Permission Level:	* Comment and rate
		Back Share
<u>Terms</u>   <u>Pr</u>		<u>Testimonials</u>   <u>Support</u>   <u>Online Backup</u>   <u>FTP Hosting</u>   <u>Email Hosting</u> 003-2010 Drive Headquarters. All rights reserved.
<		
Enable/Disable Super MS	iA on this site	🚽 😓 🄗 🚍 🖉 🖓 Zoom:100% 🔸

Share and Set Permission page

### 4.1.1 Share permission levels

There are a total of 4-6 permission levels:

- Large view Only (can display file / folder list, file icons or preview images, but cannot download original files)
- Original view only (read-only);
- View Comments & rate (Read-only and read comments to the share);
- Comment and rate (Read-only and comment the Share);
- Upload / Add (Can upload / add files / folders to the shared folder, but cannot delete / modify);
- Full Access.

#### 4.1.2 Share Change Notifications

There is also a premium service option: "Send share change notification" (which is not available to free service users). When this option is checked, and if somebody uploaded a new file / changed a file in the shared folder, the system will prompt the user to send a "Share change notification email" to all users in the "Share-to" list.

Drive Headquarters <sup>™</sup> Redefine the online storage	Log out   All Services   Features & Plans   Enterprise Service   Partnership   He My Storage Share Publish My Account
elcome <u>test_drivehq</u> ! <u>Go back to older</u>	
Select	t One Folder
Manage Shares	test12;test13@aaa.com;test14@bbb.com
Wisit Shares Emails or Dusernames, separated b	riveHQ Enter DriveHQ usernames or email addresses, or
🕜 Share Help	usernames Select from Your Contacts Manage Your Contacts
Folder to Share Nam	
management tool	must be unique; use only alphabet, `-' , '_' and space
Description	n: My Music
DriveHQ FileManager	88
Permission	n Level: Comment and rate
	Back Share
Service and a service of the service	e   <u>About</u>   <u>Testimonials</u>   <u>Support</u>   <u>Online Backup</u>   <u>FTP Hosting</u>   <u>Email Hosting</u> rright © 2003-2010 Drive Headquarters. All rights reserved.
Ulick on the icon at the left end of the fa	avorites bar. You can choose any favorite folder 🛛 😓 🤣 🗁 🖻 🧇 🔂 0 🛃 Zoom:100%

Share and Set Permission page

After entering the share info, click on the **Share** button, it goes to the "Share Notify" page. Please note the share has been created at this step. However, the share notification email has not been sent yet. You need to click on the button "Launch Outlook / Email Client" to open your email client software and send the notification email.

### 4.1.3 About Share Notification Email

**Note: DriveHQ no longer automatically sends share notification emails.** Notification Emails sent from DriveHQ email server is more likely to be filtered by recipients spam filters; it is also more likely to be ignored by the recipients. Therefore, sending the "share notification" email using your own email server is more likely to be received and read by the recipients.

#### Share Notification email is not always needed.

If all share-to users are DriveHQ members, then the share notification email is not required. The "share-to" users can simply logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u> using their own username / password. The folders shared to them are automatically linked in the special virtual folder: "DriveHQ Share".
Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0



The "Send share notification email" screen

## 4.2. Access a shared folder

Assume UserA shared a folder to UserB using UserB's email address, if UserB is not a DriveHQ member, then UserB will receive a Share Notification email. In the Share Notification email, there are detailed instructions about how to access the Shared folder. The instructions are as follows:

- 1. If you are a DriveHQ member, please log on to your account and access these files in the "DriveHQ Share" folder.
- 2. If you are not a DriveHQ member yet, I recommend you to sign up now using this e-mail address. My files will automatically appear in your "DriveHQ Share" Folder.
- 3. You can also access these files through the following link (you will have read-only access).

5.

You can share different folders to different users with different levels of access rights.

You can also share the same folder to different users with different levels of access rights.

Please note: Share Names must be unique. So when you share the same folder again, you must use a different share name. (See the screenshot about "Share and Set Permission page").

## **4.3 Share folders to contact groups**

You can share a folder to a contact group. A contact group is just a list of email addresses, which you can assign a name to the list. For example, you can create a contact group as "My classmates", which can include email addresses of your classmates. More detailed info about "Contact Group" is available in the "DriveHQ Email Hosting Service" section.

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

come <u>test_drivehq</u> ! <u>Go</u>	back to older version		
1 Manage Shares	Select One Fo	Ider 🔶 2 Share with Friends 🍑	
Share My Folder	Share to: Emails or DriveHQ usernames, separated by ";"		* Enter DriveHQ usernames or email addresses, or Select from Your Contacts)
	Folder to Share:		Manage Your Contacts)
he ultimate software for managing online files	Share Name:	My Music must be unique; use only alphabet, `-' , `_' and s	pace
	Description:	My Music	< >
	Permission Level:	Comment and rate	

Share a folder to contact group(s)

From the above screen, click on "Select from your contacts", it pops up a window as below:



Select the "share-to" contacts / contact groups screen

From the Select contacts window, you can select a contact(s), or check the contact group name to select all contacts in the contact group. After you made the selection, click on the Submit button on top.

By default, the system automatically creates 2 contact groups: "Friends" and "Blocked". The contact group can be used in DriveHQ webmail as a mailing list. In here, it is used to group users into multiple contact groups. You can manage Contact Groups in DriveHQ webmail section, which will be described later in the webmail section.

### 4.3.1 The benefits of sharing a folder to a contact group(s)

Sharing a folder to a contact group is equivalent to sharing it to all contacts in the contact group. However, it has some advantages:

- You can group different users into different contact groups so that it is more convenient to share folders with those contact groups;
- You can add more users to a contact group. The new users will automatically inherit any Shared folders shared to the contact group.
- You can remove a user from the contact group. The user can no longer access any folders shared to the contact group. There is no need to edit the existing share.
- If you need to share a folder to many users, e.g. more than 100 users, then the "Share-to" field might reach its maximum length. In this case, you can share it to a contact group.

# 4.4. Edit / Manage Existing Shares

If you share a folder, the new share is added to the "Shares" list. You can modify the share or delete the share later. To do so, you can logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, go to My Storage page, click on Share tab, then click on Manage Shares. It will display the Share List page:

Drive Headqua Redefine the online st		Log out   A	All Services   Features 8 My Storage	Plans   Enterpri	se Service   Pa Publish	ntnership   Hel A My Account
Welcome <u>test_drivehq</u> ! <u>Go</u>	back to older version	<u>1</u>				
Manage Shares	List of Shared F	olders			View Received	Comments
🔍 Share My Folder	Share Name	Description	Share Key	Times Visited	Create Date	Hide Link
	My Pictures	My Pictures	89051/llor4x58bekt	0	07/02/2010	Hide Link
🔢 Visit Shares	Share Link:http://	/192.168.2.105/shar	ing/ShareLogon.aspx?	key=89051/llor4	x58bekt 🗐	
Share Help	My Music	My Music	89065/8juh1g5powha	0	07/05/2010	Hide Link
	Share Link:http://	/192.168.2.105/shar	ing/ShareLogon.aspx?	key=89065/8juł	n1g5powha 🗐	
	Add	Delete		두 1 of 1 💠	1/1 💌	~
<						>

The "Manage Shares" screen (Displaying list of Shares)

You can select a share and click on the Delete button to delete it. To modify (edit) an existing share, just click on the Share name. It will go to the same Share & Set Permission page where you can change the Share name, change "Share To" users, change the permission level, etc. After you have finished editing the existing Share, click Save to save the changes; it will create a share notification email template and let you send a new Share notification email. Again, the share notification email will not be sent automatically. You can easily launch Outlook or other email client to send the notification email. A "Launch Outlook / Other Email Client" button is included for quickly launching a new Outlook email

Window.

From the Share List page, you can also copy the Share Link. The Share Link (or Share URL) is different from Publish Link (or Publish URL). If you open a new web browser and enter the Share URL, it will ask for email verification. You must enter the email address that's included in the Share-to list of the Share. A Publish URL directly opens the published folder or file without any verification.

## 4.5 Accessing a shared folder by clicking on the "Share Link" without logon

If you shared a folder with a DriveHQ username instead of an email address, then the recipient user can enter its DriveHQ user's registered email address, or the user's DriveHQ email address (USERNAME@drivehq.com) in the Share Verify window.

	Share verity
Share Informat	tion:
Share Owner: Share Name: Description:	test_drivehq My Pictures My Pictures
	Visit Times: 0   Create Time: July 02, 2010 Enter an email address included in the share-to list of this Share; if shared to a DriveHQ user, then enter: USERNAME@drivehq.com, o the user's registered email address.
Please enter you	ur email address.
Your Email:	
	Submit

The "Share Verify" page

If the email address is verified, then the user will be directed to the "Show Shared Folder" page as shown below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Drive Headquarters <sup>™</sup>	Sign up FREE	Log on   All Service	es   Enterprise Serv	ice   Partnership   Help 🔺		
Redefine the online storage		Features S	hare Publ	ish Software		
Up Upload Download Zip Download	Share Publish New Folder New	File Copy Cut	X (	_ ~ ~		
Folder Path: \\test1\My Pictures\	onare Pablion newrolder new		. Delete Pas			
	💭 Slideshow 📥 Download All  🔢	🛛 View 🔝 💌 Option	👻 🕑 Play Music			
	My Pictur	es				
SamplePhoto SamplePhoto 2.jpg	nplePhoto	GamplePhoto 9	□ Samp 4.jpg Page 1 of 1 (4 ite	< << 1 >> >		
	My Pictures	;				
Comments Total ratings: 0 Average rating: 0 of 10						
	Page 0 of total 0	pages				
Would you like to comment?						
Join DriveHQ for a free account, or Log	<u>on</u> if you are already a member.					
4 Files/Folders, Folder Size: 2.95 MB				<b>•</b>		

Displaying a shared folder by clicking on the Share Link without logon

This sharing method is called **Non-member Sharing Method**, which can be used to share a folder to any non-DriveHQ member users.

### 4.5.1 Access a shared folder with Full-Access right

This non-member sharing method has one weakness. Although you can share a folder with "full access" or "upload / add" permission, a non-DriveHQ user can never upload files to a shared folder. To upload files / delete files in a shared folder, you must logon as a DriveHQ member. The non-DriveHQ user can sign up a new account on DriveHQ using the email address that's included in the "Share-to" list within 10 days. After he / she logons on the new account, he / she can see the Shared folder(s) in the special folder:

```
\DriveHQ Share\SHARE FROM USERNAME\SHARE NAME
```

If the folder is shared with proper access right, and if the Share-to user logs on his/her own DriveHQ account, then the user may upload / modify / delete in the shared folder:

Drive Headqua Redefine the online s		Log	) out   All Se	My Storage		Enterprise Servi		hip   Help	
Welcome <u>dhqtest</u> ! <u>Go bac</u>	<u>k to older version</u>								
	nload Zip Download	J Share I	Dublish	🖆 New Folder	New File	Copy Ci		Paste	💭 Rate
IriveHQ Root	Folder Path: \\test_	drivehq\My Pi	ctures∖						^
🖻 🤤 My Storage	Select C	Search	📥 Dowr	nload All	💶 View	🎲 Option	💭 Slide	Show	$\mathbf{E}$
My Documents							My Pictur	юс	=
My Music My Pictures PublicFolder Wwwhome DriveHQ Share My My Chare My My My Chare My My My Chare My My My Chare My My Chare	<ul> <li>Image: Second se</li></ul>	ampl1.jpg			Samp	<b>і</b> 2.jpg	, y ricca		S: ~
····· 🔽 My Profile	<	0.1			/1	1 7 11 4		1 ·	>

A DriveHQ user accesses a folder shared to him / her with Full-Access right

As you can see from the above screenshot, the Share-to user "dhqtest" logged on and accesses the folder "My Pictures" shared by "test\_drivehq". As you look at the toolbar section, the Upload, download, New Folder, New File, Cut, Delete, Copy buttons are all enabled, meaning user"dhqtest" can create, upload, modify or delete files / folders in the shared folder.

# 4.6 Comment / Rate a shared folder

When a DriveHQ member accesses a shared folder, he/she can also comment or rate the folder. Just scroll down to the bottom of the "Show Shared Folder" page, you can see comments and ratings by other users; also there is text box and drop down list for you to comment and rate the folder / files.

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Drive Headquar	ters™	Log out   Al	Services   Feature	es & Plans   Er	nterprise Servio	e   Partners	hip   Help				
Redefine the online sto			My Storage	Share	Publis	h My J	Account				
Welcome <u>dhqtest</u> ! <u>Go back t</u>	to older version										
😰 🆄 🖄 Up Upload Downlo		🔍 🔽 Sharo Publish	New Folder	Now File	Copy Cu		Lasto -		₩ ogrado		
DriveHQ Root	Comments						Total rating	gs: 0	Average rating:		Not Rated of 10
Hy Music Hy Pictures Holder	Ratings: 5	v out of 10	(Only 250 char	acters left.)	∧ ∨	ost					
My Profile	4 Files and Folders	s, Fulder Size: 2.95	i MB								
Done	:					Ш				i 🔗 🗲 🔁 🛞 🛙	> \$200m:100% •

Comment and rate a shared folder

The user who shared the folder can read the comments and ratings from the "Share List" screen, then click on "View Received Comments" link. It will display the list of comments and ratings.

Log out   Mobile Version   All Services   Features & Plans   Entre         Redefine the online storage         My Storage						Partnership   Heli
Welcome <u>test drivehq</u> ! <u>Go</u>	back to o	older version				
🍸 Manage Shares	List of	comments to your share	ed / published fol	ders.		=
🔍 Share My Folder		Object Name	Observer	Rate	Post Date	
		SamplePhoto1.jpg	dhqtest	8	2010/07/13	Delete
Visit Shares	so bea	utiful!				
🕜 Share Help						[
		Delete	🖗 1 of	1 🔿	1/1 💌	~
<			. 1			>

View comments and ratings

# 5. Publish Folders or Website

## 5.1 What is Publish? (Create direct file links or publicly accessible websites)

Publish means to make your files / folders / web pages / website accessible to anybody on the Internet, incl. those non-DriveHQ members.

If you publish a folder / file on DriveHQ, you can link to the folder or files in it with static URLs (i.e. Publish URLs). You can link to the file(s) / folder(s) from any other websites or web pages.

### 5.1.1 Only Paid Users or True users can publish on DriveHQ.com

Please note: by default, your DriveHQ folders and files are secure and private. Other users cannot access your files / folders unless you have shared your folders (files) or published your folders (files).

Only "True Members" or "Paid Members" can Publish Folder / File / Website. Free members can also publish. However, the Publish will expire in 20 minutes.

## **5.2 Publish Folders / Files**

To publish a folder / file, you can logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, go to My Storage page, then select a folder / file to publish, click on Publish button in the toolbar, as shown below:



Publish a folder on DriveHQ.com

After you click on Publish, it will go to the "publish & set permission" page.

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Folder to Publish:	<u>\My Music</u>
Publish Name:	My Music *
	must be unique; use only alphabet, '-' , '_' and space
Description:	My Music
	*
Permission Level:	Comment and rate
Membership Agree	ment 💽
	greement sets forth the terms and conditions on which DriveHQ INC.,
-	d services to registered users (each a "Member") of the website

Publish & Set Permission page

It is usually recommended to only use alpha-numeric characters for the Publish Name (and file names / folder names). When you publish a folder / file, usually you want to create Publish URLs for linking to the folder and files in it. If you have special characters in your file name / folder name or share name, then the publish URL might also contain such characters, which might corrupt the URL.

In the "Publish & Set Permission" page, you can enter the publish name, description, choose one from 4 permission levels, then check the "**Yes, I agree**" check box, and finally click on **Publish**. It will publish the folder immediately, then redirect to the confirmation page as shown below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

ublished	
	Your folder/file has been published successfully!
	The published folder/file is accessible at: (No logon is required)
	http://192.168.2.105/folder/p89086.aspx 🗐
	The published files can be directly linked in this URL format: http://192.168.2.105/file/df.aspx/publish/test_drivehq/My Music/FILENAME
	Please make sure to replace FILENAME with the real filename. FILENAME cannot contain spaces and invalid characters.
"download bytes". You	ust published a folder/file. Please note if any user downloads your published file, they will be using your r <b>monthly</b> maximum download bytes is . It is a good time to subscribe to our service. You will receive nd at least 20 times more download bytes/month!
	very good contents or if you need a huge amount of bandwidth, then if you are actively promoting service, ner support. They might be able to offer you discount or even free service. Please note it is solely at their
	Upgrade Now

In the Publish Confirmation page, you can find the Publish URL for the folder and the Publish URL(s) for the files in the published folder.

Note:

Publish URLs for files in a published folder may not work if the Publish permission is set to "Large view only" or "Original view only". The permission of "Large view only" and "Original view only" prevent the original file(s) from being downloaded.

### Publish a File:

You can also select only one file and publish it. The steps are pretty much the same. When you publish a file, the file is automatically copied to a new folder named **My Share** under the My storage folder path. The new folder is then published. This is done automatically by the system.

## 5.3 Manage / Modify / Delete an Existing Publish

After you have published a folder, you might want to modify / delete the existing Publish. To do so, logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u> and click on the Publish tab. You will see the main Publish Screen below:



Publish Main Page

On the left hand side, you can easily publish a new folder by clicking on "Publish a Folder" link. To manage existing Publishes, click on the link "Manage My Publishes", it will go to the "List of Published Folders" page:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Folder 🗢					
e My	Publish Name	Description	<b>Times Visited</b>	Create Date	<u>Hide Lin</u>
s	wwwhome	wwwhomeShareDescr	0	07/02/2010	Hide Link
URL	Link:http://192.	168.2.105/folder/p89009.aspx 🗐			
	PublicFolder	Published folder for public access	0	07/02/2010	Hide Link
URL	Link:http://192.	168.2.105/folder/p89016.aspx 🗐			
	My Music	My Music	0	07/13/2010	Hide Link
URI		168.2.105/folder/p89086.aspx 🕮			
_		published file from other web	pages, such as	eBay or MySp	ace?
	In the above list, find a URL pattern http://www.drivel	click on a Publish Name, it brings un for linking to published files, the U ng.com/file/df.aspx/publish/YOUR_U	<b>pages, such as</b> p the detail (SetP RL pattern is like	<b>eBay or MySp</b> Permission) page :	e. You can
	In the above list, find a URL patterr http://www.drivel <b>How to access a</b>	click on a Publish Name, it brings u n for linking to published files, the U ng.com/file/df.aspx/publish/YOUR_U a published folder?	pages, such as p the detail (SetP RL pattern is like JSERNAME/PUBLI	eBay or MySp ermission) page : SH_NAME/FILEM	ace? e. You can
	In the above list, find a URL pattern http://www.drivel How to access a You can use a we To download large	click on a Publish Name, it brings un for linking to published files, the U nq.com/file/df.aspx/publish/YOUR_U a published folder? b browser and type in the URL of the e files or files in batch, use DriveHQ	pages, such as p the detail (SetP RL pattern is like JSERNAME/PUBLI ne published folde <u>p</u> FileManager, For	eBay or MySp ermission) page : SH_NAME/FILEN er. r example, inpu	pace? e. You can NAME
	In the above list, find a URL pattern http://www.drivel How to access a You can use a we To download larg \\drivehq\driv	click on a Publish Name, it brings un for linking to published files, the U ng.com/file/df.aspx/publish/YOUR_U a published folder? b browser and type in the URL of the e files or files in batch, use DriveHQ ehqsoftware in the address bar a	pages, such as p the detail (SetP RL pattern is like JSERNAME/PUBLI he published folde ) FileManager. For nd click Go buttor	eBay or MySp ermission) page : SH_NAME/FILEN er. r example, inpu	pace? e. You car NAME
	In the above list, find a URL pattern http://www.drivel How to access a You can use a we To download large	click on a Publish Name, it brings u in for linking to published files, the U inq.com/file/df.aspx/publish/YOUR_U a published folder? b browser and type in the URL of the e files or files in batch, use DriveHQ ehqsoftware in the address bar a v Tools Help DriveHQ.File	pages, such as p the detail (SetP RL pattern is like JSERNAME/PUBLI he published folde ) FileManager. For nd click Go buttor	eBay or MySp ermission) page : SH_NAME/FILEN er. r example, inpu	pace? e. You can NAME
	In the above list, find a URL pattern http://www.drivel How to access a You can use a we To download larg \\drivehq\driv File Edit View Disconnect Uploa	click on a Publish Name, it brings u in for linking to published files, the U inq.com/file/df.aspx/publish/YOUR_U a published folder? b browser and type in the URL of the e files or files in batch, use DriveHQ ehqsoftware in the address bar a v Tools Help DriveHQ.File	pages, such as p the detail (SetP RL pattern is like JSERNAME/PUBLI the published folde p FileManager. For nd click Go buttor Manager	eBay or MySp ermission) page : SH_NAME/FILEN er. r example, inpu	pace? e. You car NAME

Publish List page

You can select a Publish to delete; or you can click on a Publish to modify it.

### 5.3.1 The Publish URLs (direct links) for a published folder and files in it

The publish list page also tells you how to get the Publish URLs. Published folders / files can be accessed from DriveHQ.com website using regular publish URLs in this format: http://www.drivehq.com/file/df.aspx/publish/USERNAME/PUBLISHNAME/FILENAME

They can also be accessed using DriveHQ FTP URL, which is as follows: ftp://ftp.drivehq.com/USERNAME/PUBLISHNAME/FILENAME

Published folders can also be accessed from DriveHQ FileManager client software. As shown above in the "Publish List page" screen, Logon DriveHQ FileManager, then type in the address:

where USERNAME is the user who published the folder. Using DriveHQ FileManager or DriveHQ FTP, you can drag & drop download many folders / files in the published folder at once.

You can hide the username and sharename in the publish URL by using the "Safe Publish URLs". You must use DriveHQ FileManager to right click on published files / folders. For more info, please read the section about DriveHQ FileManager.

### 5.3.2 Comment and Rate

When you publish a folder, you can set the permission to "Download & Comment". This allows the other users to download your files and comment your files;.

You can view the "received comments" from the Publish List page, click on "Received Comments" link.

## 5.4 Publish Website

DriveHQ supports static web hosting service. To publish a static website (that doesn't require server-side scripting & database) on DriveHQ is extremely easy. You only need to upload your website files to the wwwhome folder.

If you have a paid account, your website is automatically published. You can access your website in DriveHQ at:

http://USERNAME.drivehq.com

The default website file name is "home.htm". If you use a different default website file, e.g. index.html or default.htm, you just need to delete the current Home.htm file, upload your index.html / default.htm file into the wwwhome folder, then make a copy of the home page file and rename the copy as home.htm.

If you have a free account, you cannot publish a website. You must upgrade to a paid account or True Account.

### 5.4.1 Activate, disable and re-enable your website

For a True Account, your website is not automatically activated. In fact, the current implementation requires a True Account to disable the website and then re-enable the website.

To disable and re-enable your website, from the Publish Main page, click on "Publish My Website", it will go to the following page:



Publish website page

Click on Enable/Disable tab, then click on "Disable My Website" button to disable your website, then click on "Enable My Website" again to re-enable your website.

## 5.4.2 Upload / edit your website files & the default home page file

You can click on Edit Homepage to edit your homepage. However, a recommended method is to create your own home page files using other HTML authoring software, then drag and drop the website files to the wwwhome folder using DriveHQ FileManager or FTP client software.

```
Please note your default home page file is "home.htm". When you enter: 
http://USERNAME.drivehq.com/
```

this file will be displayed. If you use other file name as your home page file, you can delete "home.htm", then make a copy of your own home page file and rename it to "home.htm".

### 5.4.3 Custom Domain Website Hosting Service

DriveHQ web hosting service supports Custom Domain web hosting. For more info, click on "Custom Domain" tab in the "Publish Website" page. A lot of detailed support info is available in this page.

DriveHQ supports Custom Domain Web / FTP / Email Hosting; however, DriveHQ does not offer Domain Registration service. To use DriveHQ custom domain hosting service, you must have registered a domain from a domain registrar company, such as Network Solutions, Register.com or GoDaddy, etc.

If you have registered a domain, then you need to add a DNS A-Record. For most small businesses, you probably don't have your own DNS server, which is fine. All (almost all?) domain registrar companies offer free DNS service if you order domain name through them.

To create a custom domain website, you need to add a DNS A-Record, such that www.YOURDOMAIN resolves to 66.220.9.55 YOURDOMAIN is like xxx.com, xxx.biz or xxx.net, etc.

How to add a DNS A-Record is not covered in this document. Different domain registrars' websites have different implementations. You need to search on your domain registrar's website, or contact their support for more detailed info. You might be able to get a little more info on DriveHQ support forum; such info may not be up to date as your domain registrar company can change their web pages from time to time.

Once you have added a DNS A-Record, please wait for 12-24 hours. DNS changes usually take 12-24 hours to update. You can also check the status by typing in a command-line window:

📾 Administrator: Command Prompt	
C:\>ping (hosting.drivehq.com) Pinging hosting.drivehq.com [66.220.9.55] with 32 by Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Request timed out. Change to your own do	
Ping statistics for 66.220.9.55: Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 (100%	loss),
C:\>_	-
	► //

Ping www.YOURDOMAIN

If it displays ping <u>www.YOURDOMAIN</u> [66.220.9.55]..., then your DNS A-Record has been successfully updated on your DNS server. (Please note DNS update needs to propagate to more DNS servers. It could take a few more hours before our DNS server receives the update.)

Once the DNS A-Record has been successfully updated, you can go back to the Custom Domain page, as shown below:

Drive Headquarte Redefine the online storage	rs™	Version   All Services   Features & Plans   Enterprise Service   Partnership   Hel My Storage Share Publish My Account	^
Welcome <u>test_drivehq</u> ! <u>Go_bac</u>	<u>k to older version</u>		III
🚳 Publish Folder 🔻	Edit Info Edit Hom	epage Enable/Disable Custom Domain	
Publish WebSite ▼       > Manage My Website       Help	you are not familiar v DriveHQ premium us sites on DriveHQ.com domain, please add ti Please note DNS char	bsites, FTP or email addresses are quite complicated. If with them, please do NOT waste time as it will confuse you. ers can host Custom Domain websites, email addresses and FTP n. If you are an IT system administrator and if you already own a he necessary DNS A-records, then enter the information below. Inges usually take 12-24 hours to propagate. DriveHQ now offers Ve can help you register a new domain name, configure the DNS	
	and setup your custo more info). FTP Domain Name:	m domain website, email addresses or FTP site. (Read below for Please add a DNS A-Record such that FTP.YOUR-DOMAIN resolves to 66.220.9.50. No other configuration is required.	
	Web Domain Name:	(e.g.: www.YourDomain.com. Leave empty if you don't have a website)	
	Email Domain Name:	(e.g.: YourDomain.com. Leave empty if you don't use DriveHQ email service)	~
<			

Custom Domain Website Publish page

You can enter your website domain name and email domain name at the same time. Leave empty if you don't want to use custom domain service. Scroll down to the bottom of this page and click on Submit to save the info. Your custom domain website is now available online at:

### http://www.YOURDOMAIN/

You will still need to upload your website files to the wwwhome folder, if you have not already done so.

For more info about Custom Domain Email Hosting service, please read the DriveHQ Email Server Hosting Service section.

Custom domain FTP Server Hosting service is easier. You only need to add a DNS A-Record such that <u>ftp.YOURDOMAIN</u> resolves to 66.220.9.50

# 6. DriveHQ Group Account Service

DriveHQ offers the basic service for free. Moreover, you can upgrade to group account service for free, which also includes one free sub-user license!

DriveHQ group account is designed for businesses, organizations or a group of people who need to create multiple accounts, share and collaborate files, or centrally administer multiple accounts, etc.

## 6.1 Upgrade to a group account for free

Upgrading to a group account is very easy. Just logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, go to My Account page, and then click on Group Account, as shown in the screenshots below:



How to go to My Account page

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Drive <mark>Headquar</mark>	ters™	Home   Enterprise Service   Partnership   Mobile Version   Log ou
Welcome <u>dhqtest</u> !		
Account Details		Help market the best Internet storage website, earn up to 30% commission
🗟 Account Options	Your referral lin	nk: http://www.drivehq.com/secure/signup.aspx?refID=270128
👜 Customization	My Account Deta	ails
Group Account		orm below and click the "Submit" button to update your account profile.
🗹 Subscribe	Required Information	on
🗟 Deposit	User Name: Email Address:	dhqtest dhqtest@gmail.com * (Requires verification)
G Transaction ► History	Change my password	
Your account type is:	Optional Informatio	on
True Account	First Name:	Last Name:
(Upgrade to Paid Account) Refer Your Friends	Street Address1:	Phone Number:
	Street Address2:	Mobile Number:
	City:	
< ]		

From the My Account page, click on Group Account link, it displays the "Free upgrade to group account page":

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0



This page has a lot of useful information about Group Account service. So please take a moment to read the information. After you have finished reading the page, scroll down to the bottom and click on "Free Upgrade to Group Account". It will display a confirmation window as shown below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Drive Headquar	Home   Enterprise Service   Partnership   Mobile Version   Log o
brive neadquar	Storage Backup FTP Email
Welcome <u>dhqtest</u> !	
Account Details	Upgrade to Group Account
Account Balance	Please read our Group Account Terms and Agreement. This agreement is in addition to the general service agreement. If you agree to it, please check the checkbox and click Upgrade.
🗟 Account Options	general service agreement. If you agree to ity prease encert the encertains encer opgrader
Dege Customization	DriveHQ Group Account Terms and Agreement
🚴 Group Account	This agreement is in addition to the standard service agreement.
🗹 Subscribe	(1) Group Account is designed for organizations and
🗟 Deposit	businesses with a group of people. Individual accounts can also be upgraded
⊕ Transaction ► History	V Yes, I agree
Your account type is:	Upgrade Cancel
Upgrade to Paid Account) Refer Your Friends	
Refer Tour Friends	

Read the Group Account Terms and Agreement, check the "Yes, I agree" check box, and then click on Upgrade, your account will be upgraded to a group account immediately.



Upgrade to Group Account confirmation page

# 6.2 The "Group Admin" features

So now you have become a group account, you immediately have access to the Group Admin tool. Click on the "Group Admin" link, it goes to the Group Admin main page:

Drive Headquarter	тм	Home   Enterp	orise Service   Partner	ship   Mobile Version   Log	l out	
Drive Headquarters		Storage	Backup	FŤP Email		
Welcome <u>dhqtest</u> ! <u>Group Admin</u>	1					
🕝 Back 🛛 🐉 Create 🛛 👌	👌 Add 🛛 🔏 Import	📝 Edit 🛛 📄 Save	🗙 Delete	U Refresh Actio	n 🔻	
灥 User Management	Group Administrator	[Maximum numbe	r of sub users: 1	<u>Need more?</u>		
Group Members	User Name Used :	Space Max Space	Used/Max Downlo	adBytes User Type	Status Cre	ate Time 🗢
droup Settings						
▶ Group Account Balance						
▶ Group Backup List						
▶ Group Options						
<	Reset Password	Set Storage	Enable/Disable	View Account	Backup Status	Logon As
		Group Ac	lmin main	page		

There are a lot of functions in this page. On top, you can see the Toolbar:

👌 Create	🗞 Add 🐁 Import 📝 Edit 🥽 Save 🗙 Delete ⊍ Refresh 🛛 Action 🤊
Create:	Create a new sub-user; no email confirmation is needed.
Add:	Add an existing DriveHQ user to this group account. For security reason, the use will be sent a "Group Invitation email". He must agree to be added to the group.
Import:	If you need to create a lot of sub-users, you can prepare a list of user info in
	Microsoft Excel file, then save it as a CSV file. DriveHQ can import the user info
	list and create all sub-user accounts in batch.
Edit:	Edit a sub-user account info.
Save:	Save the changes;
Delete:	Delete the selected sub-user(s). You can delete the sub-user(s) completely, or you can remove them from the group account, but keep their accounts on DriveHQ.com as a regular / standalone account(s).

#### 6.2.1 Create a new sub-user

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Duive II and avantes	тм	Home   Enterprise Servi	ce   Partnership   Mobile	e Version   Log out		
Drive Headquarter	5	Storage Ba	ackup FŤP	Email		
Welcome <u>dhqtest</u> ! <u>Group Admi</u>	in					
🚱 Back 🔊 Create	🙆 Add 🛛 🔒 Import	न Save 🗙 Delete 🕻	Refresh			
🚴 User Management	Create sub user					
Group Members	User Base Information					
No Sub Group Administ	User Name:	dhqtest11	]			
oroup Settings	Password:	•••••	]			
► Group Account Balance	Confirm Password:	••••				
▶ Group Backup List	Email:	dhqtest11@drivehq.com	Use DriveHQ e	email		
▶ Group Options	User Type:	Sub Group Administrat	•			
	Max Storage Space:	50 MB Total space you can alloca	te:1020 MB			
<	Max Download Bytes:	Total space you can allocate:1020 MB				
	Option Information					
	First name:		last name:			
	Address line 1:					
	Address line 2:					
	Home Phone:		Cell Phone:			
	City:		Zip:			
	State:	Please select a state 💌	Country:	United States	~	
<	Save Cancel	casta Sub usar Daga				

Create Sub-user Page

From the toolbar, click on **Create**, it will open the above "**Create sub-user**" page. You need to enter the sub-user's username, password, email address, user type and sub-group info. Other fields are optional. After you have input the data, click on the **Save** button to finish creating the sub-user.

Sub-user accounts don't need to be activated. They are always automatically activated. Moreover, you don't need to enter an email address when creating a sub-user account. You can simply check the check box "Use DriveHQ email".

### 6.2.2 Group storage allocation considerations

You need to decide how much storage space and download bytes you will allocate to your sub-user. When you allocate storage space and download bytes to your sub-user, it reduces your

own account max storage space and max monthly download bytes. You can re-allocate storage space and download bytes at any time using the "Group Admin" feature. You have two options in allocating storage space and download bytes.

- Divide your storage space and download bytes among all group members. Each sub-user will be allocated with certain amount of storage space. They can upload files to their own account. A sub-user cannot access folders / files in a different sub-user account. The group admin users can "Logon As" sub-users and gain full access to the sub-user accounts. The drawback of this solution is: you might have multiple group members, one sub-user could have used all his available storage space (or download bytes) while other users have enough free storage space and download bytes. In this case, you can upgrade to a higher level subscription, or use the "Group Admin" feature to re-allocate storage space / download bytes.
- You can create folders in your own account and then share different folders to different users with different levels of access rights. Each sub-user can logon and access the folder(s) you shared in the special folder:

\DriveHQ Share\YOUR\_USERNAME\SHARE\_NAME

A sub-user cannot access folders not shared to him / her.

When a sub-user uploads / downloads files in your shared folder, it uses your account storage space and download bytes. This way, all your group members can share the same storage space / download bytes. The drawback is: if one group member uses too much storage space / download bytes and reaches your max storage space / download bytes, then all group members will be affected!

### 6.2.3 Group User Types:

There are 5 types of group users:

- Group Owner
- Group Administrator
- Sub Group Administrator
- Regular Group Member
- Guest User

A group owner account is a special Group Administrator account that cannot be deleted. The Group Owner account username is usually the business name. It is the first user account in this group, which is responsible for the whole group, incl. creating / managing sub-users, allocating storage space, ordering premium services and paying for the service charges, etc. The group owner account cannot be deleted; its username cannot be changed using the group admin tool. DriveHQ customer support can help you change the group owner account username.

The group owner account can create more group member users, incl. group administrators.

A Group Administrator can add/create/edit/delete/disable a group member; assign storage space and monthly download bytes to group members; reset passwords or logon as sub-users. It can also help group members to create or share files / folders.

A sub-group administrator is similar to a group administrator, except it can only manage subuser accounts that were created by it.

A group guest user is a special sub-user who cannot access any Group Shared folders. It cannot see any group account info, except accessing the folder(s) shared to it in the special folder: \DriveHQ Share\

The free group account service allows for only 1 sub-user. For more sub-users, you need to order more user licenses.

### 6.2.4 Create Sub-groups

You don't directly create sub-groups. Instead, you create sub-group administrators. A sub-group administrator can create more sub-users for his own sub-group; or a group administrator can also create a sub-user and assign it to a sub-group.

A subgroup administrator has full access to all his sub-users. It can edit / reset its sub-user info, allocate storage and download bytes from its own account storage space and download bytes.

The maximum number of sub-users that can be created by a sub-group administrator is the available user licenses of the whole group account. The maximum amount of storage space it can allocate to its sub-users is limited by its own account storage space (and download bytes).

## 6.3 Group Folder Sharing and Permissions

The group account service is extremely powerful in sharing different folders and setting different access rights for different users.

First of all, you can create a list of sub-users; based on the detailed user role, you can create group administrators, sub-group administrators, regular group members and guest accounts. E.g. you can create the user lists below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Welcome <u>dhqtest</u> ! <u>Group Adı</u>	min 🗞 Add 🛛 🐔 Im	port 📝 Edi	it 📄 Save	🗙 Delete 🛛 R	efresh Action 🔻		
🚵 User Management	Group Adminis			r of sub users: 11] <u>Ne</u>			
Group Members	User Name	Used Space 3.45 MB	Max Space 5.31 GB	Used/Max DownloadByte 0 B / 21.25 GB	es User Type Group Administrator	Status Enable	Create Time マ 7/14/2010 10:36:53 AM
dhqtest21	guest1	3.45 MB	10 MB	0 B / 40 MB	Guest Account	Enable	7/14/2010 10:33:48 AM
droup Settings	dhqtest25	3.45 MB 3.45 MB	70 MB	0 B / 280 MB 0 B / 200 MB	Group Member Group Member	Enable Enable	7/14/2010 10:33:25 AM 7/14/2010 10:33:04 AM
▶ Group Account Balance ▶ Group Backup List	dhqtest23	3.45 MB 3.45 MB	50 MB	0 B / 200 MB 0 B / 40 MB	Group Member Group Member	Enable Enable	7/14/2010 10:32:43 AN
▶ Group Options	dhqtest22	3.45 MB	30 MB	0 B / 120 MB	Group Member	Enable	7/14/2010 10:31:28 AM
	dhqtest12	3.45 MB 3.45 MB	10 MB 100 MB	0 B / 40 MB 0 B / 400 MB	Group Member Sub Group Administrator	Enable Enable	7/14/2010 10:30:58 AN 7/14/2010 10:29:54 AN
	dhqtest11	3.45 MB	50 MB	0 B / 200 MB	Sub Group Administrator		7/14/2010 10:24:02 AM
	Reset Passwo		_	Enable/Disable		up Status	Logon As

As shown above on the top-left corner ("Welcome dhqtest"), the user "dhqtest" is the group owner account. (Usually it should be a company name).

Dhqtest11 and dhqtest21 are two sub-group administrators. Dhqtest12 and dhqtest13 are subusers of dhqtest11, dhqtest22, dhqtest23, dhqtest24 and dhqtest25 are sub-users of dhqtest21.

The group owner can create folders in its own account and share different folders to different users with different levels of access rights. The screenshot below shows the group owner has created folders and shared different folders to different sub-users.

Welcome	dhqtest!	Group Admi	n <u>Go back to o</u>	lder versi	on							
Û	2	些.	<b>e</b>	<b>Q</b>	6	l 🖆			X	×	Ē.	P
Up	Upload	Download	Zip Download	Share	Publish	New Folder	New File	Сору	Cut	Delete	Paste	Rate
🍠 Drivel	HQ Root		Folder Path:	My Docu	ments\							^
	/ Storage		🔲 Select	Q 9	earch	📥 Download	All 🔳 V	/iew	🔅 Opt	ion	💭 Slide S	how
	GroupRead									Mv	Documen	ts
	GroupWrite									,		=
	My Docum											=
	· 🧟 Folder4			$\sim$			$\sim$				$\sim$	
	- 🧟 Folder4											
	Folder4											
	🗟 Folder4	Guest1	◀									
	My Music			oest1	1		Foest21			F	oest22	
	My Pictures											
	PublicFolde											
	wwwhome											
	iveHQ Shar	e										
	dhqtest											
	test_driveh	pq										~
— 🖾 🧏 Му	/ Profile		<		1111							>
												1

"ShowFolder" page of a group owner account who shared folders to sub-users

When a sub-user "dhqtest11" logs on DriveHQ.com, it will display the "My Storage" page as follows:

Welcome <u>dhqtest11</u> ! <u>Sub Grou</u>	up Admin <u>Go bao</u>	ck to older version	1						
	<b>*</b>	5	<u> </u>			x	×	Ē.	P
Up Upload Download	Zip Download	Share Publish	New Folder	New File	Сору	Cut	Delete	Paste	Rate
TriveHQ Root	Folder Path: \\d	hqtest\Folder4Dhq	test11\						^
🖻 🦳 My Storage	Select	🔍 Search	📥 Download All	💶 Viev	v 🍄	Option		Slide Sho	w
🖶 🗀 My Documents		-	_		-		~		
My Music									
My Pictures									
PublicFolder									
🗄 🗂 wwwhome									
DriveHQ Share									
( 🖻 🖓 dhqtest )									
GroupRead									
Folder4Dhqtest11									
My Profile									~
	<								
	· · · · · ·	Stana aa'' ma	go of a sub u						

"My Storage" page of a sub-user account

Note here "dhqtest" is the main group name (usually a company name);

Dhqtest11 is the folder shared to "dhqtest11" by "dhqtest" with full access right. There are two other default Group shared folders: "GroupRead" and "GroupWrite", which are shared to all group members. You can edit or delete these shares from "Manage Shares" screen.

Also pay attention to the Upload / New Folder / Delete buttons. As you can see that the user "dhqtest11" can upload / create / delete files / folders in the shared folder.

Click on the "Sub Group Admin" link, it will display the following page:

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Drive Headquarte	N PC		Home   Enterp	orise Service   Partner	rship   Mobile Version   Log
			Storage	Backup	FŤP Email
Welcome <u>dhqtest11</u> ! <u>Sub Gr</u>	oup Admin				
🕝 Back 🛛 🐉 Create	💩 Add 🛛 👌 I	mport 🛛 📝 Edi	it 📄 Save	🗙 Delete	⊍ Refresh
🚴 User Management	Sub Group Ad	lministrator [M	Maximum nu	mber of sub use	rs: 11] [You can
Group Members	create 1 sub u	sers]			
	User Name	Used Space	Max Space	Used/Max Downlo	adBytes User Type
A Group Settings	dhqtest13	3.45 MB	10 MB	0 B / 40 MB	Group Member
Group Account Balance	dhqtest12	3.45 MB	10 MB	0 B / 40 MB	Group Member
▶ Group Backup List	<				>
	Reset Passw	ord Set St	torage	Enable/Disable	
	View Accourt	Backup	Status	Logon As	

Subgroup Administration page

The subgroup administrator user dhqtest11 can also create folders and share different folders to different sub-users with different levels of access rights.

When the sub-user "dhqtest12" logs on its own account, it will display the following "My storage" page:

Drive Headquarters <sup>™</sup>	Log out   Mobile Versi	ion   All Services   Feature	es & Plans   Enterprise	Service   Partners	hip   Help
Redefine the online storage		My Storage	Share	Publish My A	
Welcome <u>dhqtest12</u> ! <u>Go back to olde</u>	<u>r version</u>				
Dp Upload Download Zip		Jblish	New File Copy	Cut Delete	Paste Rate
DriveHQ Root		L1\Subaroup4dhatest12\	New File   Copy	Cui Delete	
My Storage     My Documents     My Music     My Pictures     DublicFolder		Search 🖄 Downloa	ad All 🛛 📰 View	Option	🖵 Slide Sho
Constant Sector Se	Comments				≣ Total r
GroupWrite GroupWrite dhqtest11 Subgroup4dhqtest12 My Profile	Ratings: 5	out of 10 (On	ly 250 characters lei		ost
	<	1111			>

830 Stewart Dr, Sunnyvale, CA 94085, Fax: 408-519-6748 Website: <u>www.DriveHQ.com</u> E-Mail: <u>BizDev@DriveHQ.com</u>

As you can see, the sub-user "dhqtest12" can see folders shared to the whole group by the Group Owner user "dhqtest". It can also see the folders shared to it by the sub-group admin user. But it cannot see folders shared to different sub-users.



As you can see, when the Guest user "guest1" logs on, it can only see the folder shared to him explicitly (in this case, Folder4Guest1"). The group shared folders such as GroupRead and GroupWrite are invisible.

## 6.4 Real Business Scenario

The group account service is very useful when you have a team of people using our services.

If you have a small team, then you only need one group owner account, which creates several normal group members. The group owner can either assign storage space to sub-users, or create folders in its own account and share different folders to different users with different levels of access rights. If you need to share files with external clients or vendors, then you can create guest user accounts for them so that they can only access folders you shared to him, but not other group shared folders.

If you have team of more than 10 people, then you might want to create another group administrator account, which can help manage the group account.

If you want to divide your team into multiple groups, then you can use the sub-group feature. You can create any number of sub-groups; you can also create any number of sub-users. With 2-level group account service, DriveHQ system can support 10,000s of group members.

The sub-group feature is especially useful if your company has multiple offices. The group owner account can create a sub-group administrator account for each office. The sub-group administrator can then create sub-users for his office.

A folder can be shared to the whole group, a sub-group, a contact group, or any individuals, or combinations of the above.

# 6.5 More Group Admin Features

After you have created some group member accounts, the Toolbar at the bottom of Group Admin page becomes more useful.

Reset Password	Set Storage         Enable/Disable         View Account         Backup Status         Logon As
Reset Password:	Change a sub-user password;
Set Storage:	Change a sub-user max storage space and download bytes;
Enable / disable:	Enable or disable the selected sub-user account;
View Account:	View the sub-user account info;
Backup status:	View the Online Backup task status of all group members;
Logon As:	Logon as the selected sub-user and gain full access to the sub-
	account.

### **Batch User Creation and Management**

- Import: The import feature can be used to create a lot of sub-users quickly. Click on the Import hutten in the group admin near it will provide more info. A tamplete file is

button in the group admin page, it will provide more info. A template file is available online showing how to create the user info list file.

### - Batch user management:

🗙 Delete 🛛 👌	Refresh	Act	tion 🔻	
sub users: 11] <u>N</u>	leed more?		Batch Reset Password	
;ed/Max DownloadB	ytes User Type		Batch Allocate Storage	ati
B / 1.95 GB	Guest Acc		Batch Disable	1/2
B / 11.72 GB	Group Ad		Batch Enable	1/2
B/1.95 GB	Group Me		Batch Delete	1/2
B / 1.95 GB	Group Me	mbe	Search er Enable 5/2	1/2

From the group admin page, there is an Action menu. Click on it and it will pull down more sub menus. You can apply the action to all select users at once. You can also easily search sub-users account(s).

## 6.6 Forcing Sub-users to only Use Folders Shared by Group Admin

By default, each sub-user has its own account. Folders / files belonging to a sub-user account are secure and private. Different sub-users cannot see folders belong to each other. The group administrator user(s) can logon as other group members and gaining full access to other accounts. The sub-group administrators can also logon as sub-users belonging to the sub-group.

When a group administrator user creates a sub-user, it can allocate storage space and download bytes to the sub-user, which reduces the Group Owner users' storage space and download bytes. Each sub-user is set with a storage and download bytes quota. If you (the group admin) would like to share all storage and download bytes among all group members, you can use shared folders. You can create folders in your own account and share different folders to different users with different levels of access rights.

To force a sub-user to only use folders shared by other user(s), you can delete all folders in the sub-user account. Then use the group admin tool, you can reset the sub-user's max storage space to 0. When a sub-user has 0 storage space, he cannot create / upload files or folders into his own account.

## 6.7 Group Account Settings and Group Account Balance

From Group Admin page, you can access all group account settings and balances. The group account balance and options can be accessed from the bottom-left corner of the screen, as shown below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Welcome <u>dhatest</u> ! <u>Group Admin</u>								
🕝 Back 🛛 🕈 Create	🗞 Add 🛛  着 Imp	ort 🛛 📝 Edit	Save	🗙 Delete 🛛 👌 F	Refresh Action 🔻			
🚴 User Management 💦	Group Administ	rator [Maxin	num number	of sub users: 11] <u>Ne</u>	ed more?			
Group Members Weight dhqtest11 Weight dhqtest21	User Name dhqtest0	Used Space 3.45 MB	Max Space 5.31 GB	Used/Max DownloadByt 0 B / 21.25 GB	es User Type Group Administrator 🔺			
	guest1	3.45 MB	10 MB	0 B / 40 MB	Guest Account			
Group Settings	dhqtest25	3.45 MB 3.45 MB	70 MB 50 MB	0 B / 280 MB 0 B / 200 MB	Group Member			
▶ Group Account Balance ▶ Group Backup List ▶ Group Options	dhqtest23	3.45 MB	50 MB	0 B / 200 MB	Group Member			
	<	Set Sto	orage I	Enable/Disable	View Account			
	Backup Status	Logon A						

Access group settings & balances info

Click on the "Group Account Balance" link, you can find the group account balances:

Welcome <u>dhqtest</u> ! <u>Group Adı</u>		
🚱 Back 🛛 谢 Create	Add 🔹 Import 📝 Edit 🦷 Save 🗙 Delete	⊍ Refresh
å User Management	Group Account Balance	
🕵 Group Members		^
dhqtest11	Group Creator: dhqtest	
	User License: 11 Number of S	Sub Users: 10 🗏
Group Settings	Total Space: 11.00 GB Used Space	: 37 MB
	Used File Space: 37 MB Used Messa	ge Space: 39 KB
▶ Group Account Balance	Total Download Bytes: 40.60 GB Used Downlo	oad Bytes: 0 B
▶ Group Backup List	Custom Web Domain: Custom Ema	ail Domain:
▶ Group Options		~
	Downgrade Cancel	

Group Account Balance page

Click on Group Backup List, you can find all backup tasks created by all group members.

Click on Group Options, it will display the Group Options page:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Back 👌 Create	🗞 Add 🛛 🚵 Import 📝 Edit 🕞 Save 🛛 🗙 Delete 👌 Refresh
User Management	Group Options
Group Members dhqtest11	Group member users cannot order subscription services.
	Group member users cannot see group member list.
Group Settings	<ul> <li>Don't create the default group-shared folders (GroupRead and GroupWrite)</li> <li>Group member users cannot see share list.</li> </ul>
• Group Account Balance • Group Backup List	Group member default to Go to My Storage 💉 after logon
Group Options	After logon, go to group member's own My Storage folder, which is the default behavior

Group Options Page

You can set the following group options:

- Group member users cannot order subscription services. This is the default option. The group owner account should take care of ordering subscription service and paying for the service charges.
- Group member users cannot see group member list.
   You can set this option so that different sub-users don't see each other. This is especially useful for Group Account Service Resellers where different sub-users are not affiliated and don't work for the same company / organization.
- Group member users cannot create group-shared folders You can set this option so that sub-users cannot create group shared folders. This is especially useful for Group Account Service Resellers where different sub-users are not affiliated and don't work for the same company / organization.
- Don't create the default group-shared folders (GroupRead and GroupWrite) Set this option to prevent creating the default "GroupRead" and "GroupWrite" folders. You can easily create your own Group Shared folders. (Just share a folder and check "Share to Your Group".
- Group member users cannot see share list. The group member users cannot see the "DriveHQ Share" folder and all folders shared to them.
- Group member default to Go to **"Which Service Page"** after logon: After a group member user logs on DriveHQ.com website, the system redirects to one main service page. You can configure it to go to one of the following pages:

- My Storage page;
- DriveHQ Share page: ShowFolder page showing the "DriveHQ Share" folder;
- Group Share page: ShowFolder page showing the "DriveHQ Share\GroupOwnerUserName\" folder.
- Sub User Shared Folder page: ShowFolder page showing the "DriveHQ Share\GroupOwnerUserName\SubUserName" folder.
- Web Mail page: Go to DriveHQ Webmail main page.

The default setting is to go to group member's "My Storage" page. Changing the default page might be useful in case some member users don't know how to find the shared folders.

## 6.8 Downgrade Group Account to a Standalone Account

If you have a group account and would like to downgrade it to a standalone account, well usually you don't need to. The group account service has more powerful features and it is free. If you still want to downgrade, you must first delete all sub-users using Group Admin tool. After that, go to the Group Admin main page, click on Group Account Balance. There is a Downgrade button in that page.

# 7. Account and Subscriptions

## 7.1 Sign up a Free Account (or Account Registration)

All DriveHQ services and features share the same backend database system. If you have a DriveHQ account, you can use the same account for all DriveHQ services and features.

To sign up a free account, you just need to visit <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, click on "Sign Up FREE" button or link, it will go to the Sign up page as shown below:

#### DriveHQ FREE one-step sign up.

Required Information			Why DriveHQ?			
User Name: Email Address:	(Use only: A-Z,a-z,0-9,)	businesses have chosen DriveHQ cloud-	» More than 1 million users, tens of thousands of businesses have chosen DriveHQ cloud-based services, incl. Online Storage, Sharing, Backup and FTP Server Hosting services.			
	, (Requires verification)		» Since 2003, DriveHQ is one of the first few companies offering cloud based services.			
Password:	*		» Unlike other free / cheap services, DriveHQ focuses on high quality features that create value and save money			
Confirm Password:	*		for customers. Our technologies and <u>features</u> are far ahead of other companies.			
I accept <u>Members</u>	hip Agreement		» For more info, please visit the <u>Testimonials</u> page.			
Optional Information v						

Free Sign Up

Free Sign Up Page

You only need to enter username, email address and password to sign up; you also need to check the checkbox "I accept Membership Agreement". While it is not required, it is recommended that you enter additional optional information. To enter the optional info, please click on the "Optional Information" link.

It is recommended to only use alpha-numeric characters for the username. Username should not contain any special characters, incl. spaces. For better security, it is also recommended using strong passwords, e.g. passwords that contain at least 10 characters, incl. letters, digits and other special characters such as "\_, &, !, #, @, -", etc.

Since DriveHQ has more than 1 million registered users, a lot of popular usernames have already been taken. So it is recommended to use less popular usernames.

Please note passwords are case sensitive. So a password of "abcde12345" is different from "Abcde12345".

The email address must be a real email address. If it has spam filters, please make sure your email server (or ISP) can receive emails from DriveHQ email server. After you click on "Free Sign Up" button, it will go to the "Account Created Need Activation"

After you click on "Free Sign Up" button, it will go to the "Account Created, Need Activation" page:


## Account created, need activation

### Please read it carefully before you continue or close this window

Your account needs activation. Please check your e-mail for instructions, and activate your account within **2 days.** 

An activation email has been sent to your email address. If you don't receive it in 30 seconds, please

- Check if you have entered your email address correctly.
- Check the Junk / Bulk mail folder, and check if your email provider allows email from drivehq.com.
- If you still don't receive the activation email, please contact <u>support@drivehq.com</u> with your username and email address, we can manually activate your account.

To change your email address, please go to <u>My Account</u>. You can logon to change your email address even if your account has not been activated.

### Continue

"Account created, need activation" page

Your account is created; dependent on your email address, DriveHQ usually automatically sends an "Account Activation" email to the email address you entered for registration. After you receive the Account Activation email, you must click on the Activation link to activate your account.

Certain email addresses require no activation; in this case, the system will tell that your account is created and no activation is required.

If you cannot receive DriveHQ email, then your account cannot be activated since you cannot receive the Account Activation email. It is very common that the Account Activation email could be filtered into Junk / Bulk / Trash mail folders. So please make sure you check such email folders. If you still don't receive the activation email, please contact your Network Administrator, or your ISP not to block / filter DriveHQ emails. You can also send an email to DriveHQ customer support.

Please note if an account is not activated in 2 days, it will be deleted. If so, you can easily sign up again using the same email address or a different email address. Sign up is extremely easy; it takes no more than a couple minutes to do so. If you can receive our activation email, your account can be activated instantly.

## 7.2 Account Types

Not including group accounts, DriveHQ has 3 types of user accounts:

- Free Account
- True Account

- Premium Account

The group account user types are described in the Group Account Service section.

## 7.2.1 Free Account

A free service account registered with a free email address, or an ISP email address. In general, a free account (user) is an account (user) whose identity cannot be verified. In reality, a lot of free accounts are fake accounts or test accounts.

## 7.2.2 True Account

A free service account registered with a real (custom domain) business email address; a free account who has deposited at least \$3 into its account. In general, a True Account is an account whose identity probably can be verified using the "custom domain email address" or "credit card transaction".

A True Account is still a free service account.

## 7.2.3 Premium Account (or Paid Account)

Any user who has ordered a paid subscription service is considered a premium user. Their account is "premium account" or "paid account". Also, a sub-account of a paid group account is also considered premium account.

## 7.2.4 Comparison of free service and premium service

DriveHQ offers 1GB storage space for free; it also offers the group account service for free. A free service user can upgrade to a group account and create 1 sub-user for free. It is recommended that users try the free basic service before ordering a paid subscription. The free service has almost all features of paid service with some restrictions. The main restrictions include:

	Free Service	Premium Service
Basic online	Yes	Yes
storage features		
Basic online	Yes	Yes
sharing features		
Basic online	Yes	Yes
backup features /		
software		
Basic email	Demo only	Yes

features		
Basic FTP	Yes	Yes
features		
Max storage	1GB	2GB – 10TB, dependent on service
space		plan
Max monthly	200MB/month initially; can get	4 times of subscribed storage amount.
download bytes	more download bytes by using	E.g. if you order 5GB storage space,
5	more DriveHQ features or refer	you get 20GB download bytes/month,
	more users. Max 1GB free	which is usually far more than enough.
	monthly download bytes	
Usage restriction	Personal use, casual use or	Business or personal use
	evaluation use, not for business	-
	use	
Max continuous	50MB; after 50MB, it will pause;	NO limit (or up to Max available
upload	you can click on OK button to	storage space)
1	resume.	
Folder	Can create 2 synchronization	Can create many synchronization tasks;
Synchronization	tasks; only support one-way sync.	supports 2-way sync.
Online Backup	Can create 2 backup tasks only	Can create many backup tasks
Zip Download	No	Can zip download folders and files
		using any web browser.
File versioning	No	Yes
Performance /	Might be a little slower	Might be a little faster. (There is no
Speed		guarantee as the speed is dependent on
		many factors)
Email Server	Free service is for demo only;	Most of email server features are
Hosting Service	limit to send no more than 5	supported. Can send a lot more emails /
	emails / day.	day. (Mass mailing and spamming are
		prohibited and automatically blocked.)
FTP Server	Limit to 2 concurrent FTP	Allows more concurrent connections
Hosting Service	connections only; limited to 10	
	logons per day.	
Web Publishing	Free users: Try only (website	Yes
	expires in 15 minutes)	
	True users: Yes.	
Folder / File	Free users: Try only (Publish	Yes
Publishing	URLs expire in 15 minutes)	
	True users: Yes	
Group User	1 free sub-user license only	Can order any number of user licenses
licenses		at a low price.
Custom domain	No	Yes
FTP hosting		
Custom domain	No	Yes
website hosting		

Custom domain	No	Yes
email hosting		
Custom logo and	No	Can order separately.
landing page		

## 7.3 View or Edit Account Details

Logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, click on "My Account" tab or click on your username as shown below:



It goes to Account Details page:

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Velcome <u>dhqtest</u> ! <u>Group</u>	Admin
Account Details	Earn up to 30% commission on
::: Account Balance	DriveHQ.com!
Count Options	Your referral link: http://www.drivehq.com/secure/signup.aspx?refID=270128
💷 Customization	My Account Details
🔏 Group Account	Please complete the form below and click the "Submit" button to update your account profile. Changing <b>email address</b> or <b>mobile number</b> needs to be verified.
🗹 Subscribe	Required Information
🗟 Deposit	User Name: dhqtest
Transaction	Email Address: dhqtest@gmail.com * (Requires verification)
History	Change my password
	Optional Information
Your account type is: Paid Group Account	First Name: Last Name:
Refer Your Friends	Street Address1: Phone Number:
	Street Address2: Mobile Number:
	City:
	State: Please select a state 💌 Zip Code:
	Country/Region: United States
	Referal ID: 0
	Edit my alias and icon
	You account type is: Paid Group Account
	Submit
	Thanks for using our service. Please spread the words and invite your friends to share the experience.
	Create folders with great contents and share them with your friends
	<ul> <li>Publish your files and post them on your blog or forum</li> <li>Host your personal website or blog at DriveHQ and make it searchable</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Host your personal website or blog at brivenQ and make it searchable</li> </ul>
	Account Details page

On this page, you can view or edit your account info. After finish editing, you can click on Submit button to save. If you change your email address, please note the system doesn't immediately change your email address. Instead, it will send a confirmation email to your new email address. You must receive the confirmation email and click on the confirmation link to confirm the change.

## 7.3.1 Change password / username.

From the Account Details page, you can click on "Change my password" link to change your password.

You cannot change your username online. Username usually cannot be changed. If you do need to change your username, please send an email to DriveHQ customer support.

From the Account Details page, you can also find your referral link and a link to update your Alias / Icon. The Referral Link can be used to refer other people to sign up DriveHQ.com. You can get sales commissions if you can refer users who later order DriveHQ services. The Alias and Icon may be used in DriveHQ BBS / Customer Support forum to hide your real username.

## 7.3.2 View Account Balances

From My Account page, click on Account Balance, it will display the "Account Balance" page:

Account Details	Account Balance					
Account Balance	🛛 <u>Deposit</u> 🖾 <u>Transf</u>	ier 🛛 U	odate Secure Pa	assword 🛛 <u>Refresh Ac</u>	count B	alance
🗟 Account Options	Member Since:	7/2/20	010 2:31:19 PM	Total Logon Times:	13 (se	lf)/ 0 (visitor)
💵 Customization	Member Type:	Paid G	Froup Account	Last Logon Date:	7/14/2	010 2:01:02 PM
Customization	Max Space:	5.32 0	в	Users Referred:	0	
🔏 Group Account	File Space Used:	3.45 N	1B	Max Download Bytes:	17.86	GB
Z Subscribe	Total Files:	9		Used Download Bytes:	0 B	
J Transaction History ▶	Total Emails:		10	Total Email Size:		19 KB
	Cash Balance:		\$0.00	Total Points:		0
Your account type is: Paid Group Account	Product Coupon Balar	nce:	\$0.00	Service Coupon Balanc	e:	\$275.18
Refer Your Friends	A You have referm	al link: h	ttp://www.driveh	q.com/secure/signup.aspx k out our <u>affiliate program</u>		270128.

Account Balance Page

In the account balance page, you can find your account sign-up date, Member (User) Type, Max Storage Space, Used File Space, Total Number of Files, Total Logon Times, Last Logon Date, Users Referred, Max Download Bytes, Used Download Bytes, Total Number of Emails, Total Email Data Size;

Moreover, you can also find your Account Cash Balance, Service Coupon Balance and Total Points. Your referral link is also available in this page, which you can use to refer other people.

On top of the Account Balance page, there are 4 buttons:

- **Deposit**: i.e. make a payment. You can deposit (make a payment) in your account at any time. The paid amount can be automatically used for monthly service subscription fees.
- **Transfer**: If your account has enough cash balance, you can transfer the cash balance to other DriveHQ user accounts.
- Update Secure Password: To transfer your DriveHQ account cash balance, you need to enter your DriveHQ account password and another secure password. The default secure password is the same as your DriveHQ password. After you change your DriveHQ password, the secure password does not change. You can change your secure password by clicking on "Update Secure Password".
- **Refresh Account Balance**: refreshes all saved / cached account balance info. This is very useful if your account balance has been changed from a different computer or different application. For example, you might have uploaded a file from a different computer, or somebody else might have uploaded / downloaded / deleted a file in a folder you shared to him/her; or you might have other application, such as DriveHQ FileManager, DriveHQ Online Backup or any FTP client software changed your files / folders. In this case, your account balance info might be outdated, click Refresh will being your account balance info up-to-date.. You can also logout and logon again to refresh your account balance.

## 7.3.3 Account Options Page

From My Account pages, click on Account Options, it opens the Account Options page. It has two parts: Folder Options and Email Options; the Folder Options have been described before. The Email Options will be described later.

## 7.3.4 Website Customization – customized logo and logon page

It will be described in the Enterprise Service section. The service itself is not related with the Enterprise service.

## 7.4 DriveHQ Service Subscription

## 7.4.1 Order DriveHQ Storage Subscription or Group User Licenses

From My Accounts page, you can click on Subscribe to order DriveHQ paid service. Dependent on your user type, if you have a group account, you will see two types of services:

- Storage space;
- Group user license.

If you have a regular (standalone) account, then you will only see Storage subscriptions. Subusers of a group account will not see the Subscribe button.

If you have a regular account and would like to order additional user licenses, you can click on Group Account link from My Account pages, then upgrade to a group account for free. You can then order additional user licenses.

DriveHQ premium service offers more storage space, more download bytes, fewer restrictions. A comparison of free service and premium service is available in 7.2.4.

DriveHQ offers high-end online storage, online backup, online sharing and collaboration, FTP Server Hosting services at consumer level service price. We have bundled all storage related services in the same premium service package. (DriveHQ EmailManager / Email Backup service is sold separately) DriveHQ service can create a lot of value and save a lot of cost for businesses. You can install DriveHQ client software on any number of PCs for no extra cost; you can use DriveHQ service on any number of PCs. Multiple people can logon DriveHQ at the same time.

## 7.4.2 Monthly Subscription Service and Annual Subscription Service

DriveHQ offers subscription services. All subscription services automatically renew. You can cancel a subscription online at any time to stop future billing.

To decide on monthly or annual subscription, you need to consider the following:

- DriveHQ usually does not record your credit card info. So DriveHQ never automatically debits your credit card. You must pay the service fee online. If you order monthly service, you need to pay for the service monthly.
- If you make a payment (deposit) of less than \$10, DriveHQ will apply a \$0.5 transaction fee. The transaction fee is applied by credit card processor companies. When you order DriveHQ monthly service initially, the fee is waived. To avoid the transaction fee, you can pay several months at once to make your payment more than \$10.
- To avoid the hassle of monthly payment and to avoid the transaction fee, it is recommended using our annual subscription. You also save 2 months of service fee by changing to annual service.

## 7.4.3 Upgrade to a higher level service plan

If you have ordered a subscription service and if you need more storage, more download bytes or more user licenses, you can upgrade to a higher level subscription service plan. Your account info and files / folders will remain intact.

There are several ways to upgrade:

- Order a new subscription. E.g. if you ordered 20GB storage space, and if you need 5GB more, then you can simply order a new 5GB subscription or 10GB subscription. The cost will be \$19.99/month + 7.99/month = \$27.98/month.
- If you ordered 20GB storage space, and if you need 20GB more storage space, then you can simply order a new 50GB subscription and cancel the current 20GB subscription. If your account has un-used service credit, do not worry, the remaining service credit will be kept.
- If you ordered 100GB service plan and you still need more storage space, then you can order more subscription services. For example, if you need 250GB storage space, then you can order two 100GB subscriptions and one 50GB subscription. You can also consider using DriveHQ Enterprise Service, which is described in the Enterprise Service section.

If you ordered an annual subscription and if you need to upgrade in less than 1 year, **you will not lose un-used service credit.** The service credit is automatically applied to your DriveHQ account. You can also make a payment of the difference amount and contact DriveHQ customer support. For example, if you ordered 10GB annual service, after 6 months, you want to upgrade to 20GB, then you only need to logon <u>www.drivehq.co</u>m, go to My Account, then click on Deposit and make a payment of

199.99 - 129.99/2 = 134.5.

You can find your account remaining credit online in the Account Balance page.

### 7.4.4 Change monthly subscription to annual subscription

If you ordered a monthly subscription and you would like to change to annual subscription, you can simply order a new annual subscription plan and then cancel the old monthly subscription. Your account info and files / folders will remain intact.

### 7.4.5 Service Cancelation or Downgrade

**For free service users,** there is no need to cancel the account. After all, it is free. Also DriveHQ never sends spam emails. If you still want to cancel a free account, you can delete all your files in your DriveHQ account and don't logon again. Your account will be deleted in batch later.

## For paid members:

All subscription services automatically renew, unless canceled. To cancel a subscription:

- You must delete your files, reduce storage and download bytes usage;
- If you have a group account, you must also delete all sub-user accounts.

After you have done so, you can logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, go to My Account pages, click on Subscribe, then click on Current Subscription as shown below:

1 Account Details	Subscribe	Current Subscription				
Account Balance	- All services are re - DriveHQ does not	al service is treated as Prepaid ecurring until canceled. t automatically debit your credit nnual service is recommended.	Monthly Service. card. Please make monthly payment	s or pay sever		
👼 Customization	Order Item ID	Order Date	Service Name	Price		
🔉 Group Account	<u>11586</u>	7/14/2010 10:28:19 AM	10 users group licenses	\$5.00		
Subscribe	<u>11584</u>	7/14/2010 10:28:19 AM	10 GB Subscription Service	\$19.17		
	can make a new c You can also make	order and cancel your current su e a deposit to your account. The is remaining balance in your acc	our service from monthly plan to annu ubscription. You won't lose any un-use a amount should be equal to or greate count. You should then send an email	d credit. In than the		
Paid Group Account Refer Your Friends	We recommend our users switch to annual plan. You will get a discount of two months off.					
	- To cancel your service, please click on the service you want to cancel and then click on the Cancel button.					
	* Based on our service agreement, you won't receive a refund if you cancel your service. However the remaining balance can be used to upgrade your service.					

## Current Subscription(s) Page

You can then click on a subscription service to show the subscription's detailed info:

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>Th</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Account Details	Order List - Vie	w Order - View Order Item		
Account Balance		😑 Back to View Order	🛃 <u>Back to C</u>	Order List
🗟 Account Options	Product Name:	10 users group licenses	Source:	
💷 Customization	Order Item ID: Product ID:	11586	Order ID: Quantity:	54881 1
🔏 Group Account	Unit Cost:	\$ 5.00	Ship Cost:	\$ 0.00
🗹 Subscribe	Status:	Completed Order	Tax:	\$ 0.00
🛃 Deposit	Ship Date: Note:	7/14/2010 Annual service maps to monthly service		
G Transaction ▷ History ▷		Cancel subscription		
Your account type is:				

View Order Item page and cancel a subscription

You can click on the "Cancel Subscription" button in the "View Order Item" page to cancel the subscription. If you have multiple subscriptions, you need to cancel your subscriptions one by one.

**To downgrade your subscription**, you will also need to reduce your storage usage / bandwidth usage / number of sub-users. You can then order a new lower level subscription service and cancel your current subscription(s).

## 7.5 Service Billing, Payment and Deposit

DriveHQ subscriptions always automatically renew unless canceled. Annual Subscription is treated as a "Prepaid Monthly Service with Discount of 2 months/year".

## 7.5.1 Monthly service billing date

A user's monthly billing date is the day of month when he / she signed up DriveHQ free service. You might wonder why the monthly billing date is not the day of month when you ordered the subscription. This is because a user can have multiple subscriptions ordered on different dates; a user can also cancel an old subscription and order a new subscription which causes the order date to change.. Instead of changing the user's billing date, using the initial sign-up date is more consistent.

**Monthly service billing date also applies to free service users.** Free service users have a very limited "max monthly download bytes". The "used download bytes" will reset to 0 on the monthly billing date.

## 7.5.2 Partial-month service charge

If a user doesn't sign up the free service and order paid subscription on the same date, then a partial month service fee will be recorded. For example:

If a user signs up a free account on Apr. 10; on Apr. 20, he orders DriveHQ 20GB monthly subscription. Then the monthly billing date is 10<sup>th</sup> of each month. When the user ordered 20GB monthly subscription for \$19.99/month, he will be charged for \$19.99. However, the system automatically credits \$6.66 (10 days) to the user's DriveHQ account. The service credit is displayed in the Account Balance page. The user will receive a new invoice on May 10 for an amount of:

\$19.99-6.66 = \$13.33

The user can pay only \$13.33 to get another month's service; it is usually recommended to pay several months at once to avoid the hassle of monthly payment.

## 7.5.3 Pay for the service due and payment methods

DriveHQ system automatically sends a billing email to the user when its account balance becomes negative. In the billing email, there is a lot of info regarding service billing, upgrade, downgrade and cancelation.

To make a payment (deposit), you can logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, go to "My Account" page, then click on deposit.

## **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Account Details     Account Balance     Account Options     Customization     Group Account	Deposit Vour deposit (payment) will be kept as cash balance on your account, or used to pay for any outstanding balance. You can use it for all DriveHQ services. It is recommended to pay several months at once, or pay annually to get two months off. Payment of less than \$10 will incur \$0.5 transaction fee.
🗹 Subscribe	Deposit by PayPal:
J Transaction History ▶	Deposit by credit card:
Your account type is: Paid Group Account <u>Refer Your Friends</u>	Pay by Company Check
	Ask another member to transfer balance to you.

Deposit (Make a Payment) Page

As you see, DriveHQ supports several payment methods. You can Pay by Credit Card, Pay by PayPal and Pay by Company Check / Bank Wire.

"Pay by Credit Card" and "Pay by PayPal" can both be processed instantly. Other payment methods, such as company checks or bank wire can take about 1 day to over 1 week to be processed.

## 7.5.4 Work around Transaction Problems

In order to fight fraudulent transactions, DriveHQ has required verification of all billing info. So please make sure you enter the correct credit card billing info. Unfortunately some credit cards don't support address verification, in this case, Transaction will fail. When a transaction fails, please don't retry too many times as it could cause your account being blocked by both your credit card company and DriveHQ.

**You can retry using Pay by PayPal**. PayPal is an eBay company, which is very secure and you can trust them. With Pay by PayPal, you don't need to provide your credit card info to DriveHQ at all. PayPal seems to accept more credit cards, esp. oversea credit cards; moreover, PayPal supports e-Checks using your bank account.

PayPal account is not required for "Pay by PayPal". So it is very easy to use Pay by PayPal.

**You can also retry with a different credit card.** If it still doesn't work, you can use Pay by a Company Check or Bank Wire. Email DriveHQ customer support for more details.

When you pay by PayPal, please make sure you finish your transaction in 20 minutes. Otherwise, your transaction will time out. If so and if you have made a payment to DriveHQ, please contact DriveHQ customer support to credit your DriveHQ account.

## 7.5.5 Renew your subscription – Do not order a new subscription

When you renew your subscription, you only need to make a new payment / deposit. Do not order a new subscription.

If you order a new subscription, your payment is immediately used for the new subscription. Therefore, ordering a new subscription is different from a payment.

If you incorrectly ordered a new subscription, please contact DriveHQ customer to cancel the new subscription and credit your account.

## 7.5.6 Forgot to pay on time, past-due account

If you forgot to make a payment on time, DriveHQ offers 1 month grace period. You can make a payment within 1 month after you received the invoice. Please make sure you can receive DriveHQ billing emails. DriveHQ system automatically sends monthly invoices when your account has balance due. Not receiving the billing email is not an excuse of not paying for the service on time. You can check your account balance online at any time.

If you failed to pay the balance after 1 month, certain restrictions will be applied. You cannot download files, your FTP logon and email logon may also be restricted. You can still logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u> website, upload files, manage files and folders, view your account balance, make a payment online, etc.

DriveHQ doesn't automatically cancel your subscription, nor does it automatically delete your files. Your account will be billed monthly unless you cancel your subscription(s) and delete your files. If you don't pay the service charge for more than 3 months, DriveHQ reserves the right to take any actions, incl. apply late fees and interest charges, enforce the payment, or delete your account / files.

## 7.5.7 Automatic service payment

For security and privacy concerns, DriveHQ does not record your credit card info by default. Therefore, DriveHQ never automatically debits your credit card or PayPal or bank account without your explicit approval.

If your monthly service charge is over \$30, DriveHQ supports automatic monthly payment. To setup automatic monthly payment, you need to download DriveHQ order form and fill in the form. In the form, you must provide your full name, DriveHQ username, credit card number, billing address, exp date, CVV code, monthly service charge. You must sign the form and authorize DriveHQ to debit your credit card monthly.

## **7.6 Transaction History**

From My Account pages, click on "Transaction History", you can access the following 5 reports:

"View Transaction List", "View Order Item", "View Sales History", "View Statement List", and "Current Subscription".



Transaction History menu

"View Transaction List": can be used to query transactions (payment / charge) of this user;

"View order list": can be used to query order list;

"View sales history": not used for now;

"View Statement list": display the monthly statements;

"Current subscription": display the subscription plan(s) ordered by this user.

## 7.6.1 Print Online Invoice

After you order a subscription service, you will receive an "Order Confirmation and Invoice" email, which can serve as the official invoice for accounting or reimbursement. If you don't

receive this email or cannot find this email, you can print your invoice online again. To do so, from "My Account" pages, click on "Transaction History", then select "View Transaction List" or "View Order List", it will display a list of transaction list or order list. You can click on the Transaction ID or Order ID to see the details; or select Print Invoice to display an online invoice. See the screenshot below:

Account Details	Transaction	List					
Account Balance	Q From:	(r	mm/dd/yyyy) to 🛛		(mm/dd/yy)	yy) Sear	rch
account Options	Last 24	4 Hours Last 7 [	Days Last 30 Days	Last 90 Days	Last Year	All	
👜 Customization							
🔏 Group Account	₩ ¢		Page 1 of to	tal 1 pages			
Subscribe	Transaction ID	Method	Time	Туре	Cash Amount	Status	Print Invoices
🔄 Deposit	7305165	Online Wallet	5/21/2010 2:45:18 PM	Withdraw	\$ 649.98	Completed	<u>Print</u>
J     Transaction     History     ►	<u>7305148</u>	Online Wallet	5/21/2010 2:45:18 PM	Deposit	\$ 0.00	Completed	<u>Print</u>
Your account type is:	7305131	Online Wallet	5/21/2010 2:45:18 PM	Deposit	\$ 0.00	Completed	Print

Print Invoice Online

## 8. DriveHQ FTP Server Hosting Service

## 8.1. Introduction to DriveHQ FTP Server Hosting Service

DriveHQ is the leading FTP Server Hosting service provider. DriveHQ FTP Server is not only a standard FTP Server (you can use any FTP client on any OS platform incl. Mac and Linux), but also it has lots of other high-end features that are fully integrated with DriveHQ Cloud-based services:

- Create/manage FTP sub-accounts from a web browser;
- Access files (anonymously) with FTP/HTTP/SSL or web browser;
- Share files / folders and set different access permissions;
- Automatic folder synchronization among local and remote folders; among multiple Users and PCs;
- SSL and Encrypted folder for ultimate security and privacy.
- Custom domain FTP server and customized website logo (view sample).

No software installation is required for DriveHQ FTP. You can use any web browsers or any FTP client software. Windows Explorer can also be used as an FTP client, just enter:

ftp://USERNAME:PASSWORD@ftp.drivehq.com/

The detailed FTP Server Hosting service information is also available online at: <u>http://www.drivehq.com/ftp/</u> Click on FAQ and Expand All.

## 8.1.2 DriveHQ FTP Server Name, Logon Info and Directory Info

The main DriveHQ FTP Server is: ftp.drivehq.com DriveHQ also has a premium FTP server at: proFTP.drivehq.com which is reserved for premium users only.

DriveHQ FTP Server Hosting Service is seamlessly integrated with DriveHQ.com online storage service. If you have a DriveHQ account, you can logon DriveHQ FTP server with the same username / password. If not, you can easily sign up a DriveHQ account.

Many other companies offer FTP storage where you are limited in one directory (folder) only; However, DriveHQ offers a virtual FTP server (and file server), FTP Hosting service plus great client software. You have access to your own root directory. So on your FTP client software, you don't need to specify a remote directory. You can leave it empty, or use "/", or use any directory you create in your DriveHQ.com account.

You can create multiple FTP accounts using DriveHQ group account service. You can share folders to different users (or sub-users) with different permissions. You can access your FTP storage space online, including your own files / folders, and the folders shared / published by other users.

## 8.1.3 Free FTP Service Restrictions

It is strictly forbidden that any users use our service for:

- Spread pirated contents;
- Spread "dirty" / "inappropriate" contents;
- Using automatic devices / software that keep logging on DriveHQ FTP server.
- In particular, KeyLoggers are forbidden. If there are any legitimate reasons to use KeyLoggers with our service, you must provide a copy of your photo ID and order our paid service.
- If you use surveillance camera / security camera that automatically uploads photos / videos to DriveHQ FTP server, you must order our paid subscription.

## 8.2 Connect DriveHQ FTP Server using Windows Explorer

DriveHQ FTP Server is a standard FTP Server. You can use any FTP client software connecting to ftp.drivehq.com at the default port 21. There are a lot of great FTP client applications, such as FileZilla, Smart FTP, WS-FTP and CuteFTP, etc.

Windows Explorer can be used as a simple and convenient FTP Client, so no software installation is required to use DriveHQ FTP Service. (If you need to use the FTP Service heavily, it is recommended to install one of the above FTP clients, or DriveHQ FileManager).

To connect DriveHQ FTP server using Windows Explorer, just launch Windows Explorer (or My Computer), enter the following address:

ftp://USERNAME:PASSWORD@ftp.drivehq.com/

## It will display the following FTP folder:

😰 ftp://ftp.drivehq.com/				_ 🗆 ×
🕞 🕞 🖳 ftp://ftp.drivehq.com/	- 🛃	Search		2
File Edit View Tools Help				
🕘 Organize 👻 🏢 Views 💌				0
Favorite Links	▼ Size ▼		- Date modified 📼	- Date
📕 drivehqshare		File Folder	5/23/2010 10:33 PM	5/23
More » 🔒 GroupRead		File Folder	5/21/2010 12:31 PM	5/21
Folders 🎽 🕌 GroupWrite		File Folder	5/21/2010 12:31 PM	5/21
🜉 Computer 📃 🌗 My documents		File Folder	8/11/2009 6:05 PM	8/11
Eloppy Disk Drive (A:)				
Local Disk (C:)				
🛃 DVD Drive (D:) Integration				
Network				
🦉 Internet Explorer				
🕎 ftp.drivehq.com				
🚹 drivehqshare				
My documents				
Control Panel				
			~	•
4 items	User: test14	ł	😜 Internet	11.

## DriveHQ FTP Folder

You can also enter:

ftp://USERNAME@ftp.drivehq.com

It will open the FTP folder as follows. Since you have only provided the FTP username at this time, you have not logged on yet.

👔 ftp://ftp.drivehq.com/		
G V Rtp://ftp.drivehq.co	m/ 💌 🖅 Search	
File Edit View Tools Help		
🔄 Organize 🔻 📑 Views 💌		0
Favorite Links	Name 🚽 Size	▪ Type   ▪ Date ▼ ▪ ►
Documents		
E Pictures		
More »		
Folders 🗸		
📃 Desktop 📃		
Administrator		
Public		
👰 Computer		
🛃 Floppy Disk Drive (A:) 🍇 Local Disk (C:)		
DVD Drive (D:) Integratic		
Network		
🦲 Internet Explorer		
ftp.drivehq.com		
Control Panel		
🧾 🦉 Recycle Bin 📃		
0 items	User: test14	😜 Internet 🥼

Open an FTP folder

To logon DriveHQ FTP in Windows Explorer, click on the File menu, then select Login As:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

👔 ftp://ftp.drivehq.com/	(	
🌀 🕞 📝 ftp://ftp.	.drivehq.com/ 💽 🚱 Search	
File Edit View Tools	s Help	
Login As	√5 ▼	0
New		
Create Shortcut	Name 👻 Size 👻 T	ype 🔽 Date 🔻 🕶 🕨
Delete		
Rename		
Properties		
Close	~	
📃 Desktop	<b>_</b>	

Logon DriveHQ FTP using Windows Explorer

You can also "Logon As" using mouse Right-click, e.g.:



Using mouse right click, you can also launch the logon dialog as shown below:

Log On A	s	×
?	To log on to this	FTP server, type a user name and password.
	FTP server:	ftp.drivehq.com
	User name:	test14
	Password:	•••••
	After you log on	), you can add this server to your Favorites and return to it easily.
A	FTP does not en server. To prot	crypt or encode passwords or data before sending them to the ect the security of your passwords and data, use WebDAV instead.
	🗌 Log on anon	
		Log On Cancel

FTP logon screen using Windows Explorer

After you enter your DriveHQ username and password to logon, it will display the DriveHQ FTP Folder.

Using DriveHQ FTP Folder, you can easily drag and drop files between the FTP folder and any other local folders. You can create a sub-folder in the FTP folder; you can also double click on a file in the FTP folder and open the remote file.

For Mac users, please download (free) Mac FTP client software (e.g. FileZilla), which supports drag and drop. Mac Finder also supports FTP.

## 8.3. Configure FTP client software to connect DriveHQ FTP server

You can access your DriveHQ remote storage with any popular FTP clients, including Smart FTP, CuteFTP, WS FTP, FileZilla, etc. To configure your FTP client, please use the following info as needed:

FTP server:	ftp.drivehq.com or proFTP.drivehq.com (for
	premium users only)
Port number:	21
Username and password:	your DriveHQ user name / password;
Remote directory (optional):	Unlike other FTP services where you only get a User
	Account / Directory, DriveHQ gives you a virtual FTP
	server, so you can access the root folder. You can leave it
	blank or enter "/" as the root folder. You can also create

your own folder on DriveHQ.com and use that folder as the remote directory.

Note: When accessing behind a NAT / firewall, please set FTP access mode to PASSIVE (PASV). Since Microsoft command-line FTP doesn't support passive mode, please use other GUI-based FTP clients mentioned above.

DriveHQ has recently launched a new proFTP.drivehq.com site dedicated for premium users, which has far better support on Active FTP. If you have a paid account, you probably can access the new FTP site using Microsoft command-line FTP client.

## 8.4 Access Shared Folders through FTP

If you have received a share notification e-mail from a DriveHQ user, you can access the shared folder through FTP. Please read the share notification e-mail carefully, you will find instructions there.

- 1. You can click on the share notification link, then verify your email address, which gives you read-only or download only access to the shared folder using a web browser.
- 2. Sign up a free DriveHQ account using the email address; then log on using your username and password. The shared files will appear in your account in a special folder: \DriveHQ Share\OtherUserName\ShareName

To gain Write Access to the shared files / folders, you must use the second method and logon with any FTP client software. Otherwise, if you are not a DriveHQ member, you will have read-only access to a shared folder, even if the owner has authorized higher level access to you. To access at the authorized level, please sign up an account on DriveHQ.com.

If you are a DriveHQ member, and if another user shared a folder to you, you can logon DriveHQ FTP server using any FTP client and access the folders shared to you in the special virtual folder:

\DriveHQShare\OtherUSERNAME\SHARENAME

## 8.5 Create FTP sub-accounts and manage sub-accounts online:

You can logon www.drivehq.com, click on My Account and then click on Group Account to upgrade your account to a Group Account for free. (For more details, please read the group account section).

You can then create sub-accounts. As a group owner or administrator, you can create/add/edit/delete/disable sub-users; you can also allocate storage space and bandwidth to your sub-accounts. The same sub-users can also logon DriveHQ FTP server using any FTP client software.

## 8.6 Anonymous FTP logon

DriveHQ FTP Server supports anonymous FTP logon. To access a folder with anonymous FTP, the folder must have been published. You can publish a folder using DriveHQ.com website, or more easily using DriveHQ FileManager client software.

Published folders are accessible using "Publish URLs", which are usually HTTP URLs. If you want to access a published folder using FTP client software and if you know the publisher's username, e.g. "Mike", you can log on anonymously as follows:

Logon as the username "anonymous", enter your e-mail address as the password. Once connected, change the folder to "/Mike", and you will see all folders published by Mike.

Files in a published folder can also be accessed directly through a link (address) like: ftp://ftp.drivehq.com/USERNAME/PUBLISHNAME/FILENAME e.g.: ftp://ftp.drivehq.com/DriveHQ/DriveHQSoftware/DriveHQFileManager.exe

## 8.7 Using MS Office with DriveHQ FTP

Microsoft Office supports FTP Folder. So you can open an office file on DriveHQ FTP using MS Office, edit it and save it back to DriveHQ FTP. (DriveHQ FTP storage uses the same DriveHQ remote storage system.)

To use DriveHQ FTP with MS Office, first of all, you need to map an FTP Folder. To do so, click on the Start button, then right click on Computer menu, select "Map Network Drive".

Notepad	Administrator		
3.1	Documents		
Paint	Computer		
Microsoft Office Word 2007	Computer	Open	
	Network	Explore Manage	
Microsoft Visual Studio 2008	Control Panel	Map Network Drive	
Calculator		Disconnect Network Drive	
	Administrative	✓ Show on Desktop	
SourceOffSite	Help and Supp	Rename	
Conferring Destinguistics		Properties	
Contraction Default Programs	Run		
Microsoft Office Excel 2007	Windows Secu	rity	
C			
Microsoft Office PowerPoint 2007			
All Programs			
Start Search	C• (		
🎦 Start 📗 📰 🏈 🕞 😱 📗 🜉 Windows Task Ma 🖉 Updates Website.t 🖉 Untitled - N			

Map FTP Folder

It will open the map network drive window, as below. Click on the link at the bottom of the window:

👹 Map Netwo	rk Drive
🌀 🍕 Map	Network Drive
What ne	twork folder would you like to map?
Specify t	he drive letter for the connection and the folder that you want to connect to:
Drive: Folder:	Z:
	Example: \\server\share
(	Connect using a <u>different user name</u> . <u>Connect to a Web site that you can use to store your documents and pictures</u> .
	Finish Cancel

## Map network drive screen

It will then open a new dialog "Add Network Location" as shown below:

🔜 Ac	dd Network Location	X
$\bigcirc$	Add Network Location	
	Welcome to the Add Network Location Wizard	
	This wizard helps you sign up for a service that offers online storage space. You can use this space to store, organize, and share your documents and pictures using only a web browser and Internet connection.	
	You can also use this wizard to create a shortcut to a website, an FTP site, or other network location.	
	Next Cancel	

### Add network location

🔳 Ad	d Network Location	×
Θ	Add Network Location	
	Where do you want to create this network location?	
	Choose a custom network location Specify the address of a website, network location, or FTP site.	
		Next Cancel

Select "Choose a custom network location", then click on Next button again, it displays this page:

🔳 Ac	dd Network Location	×
Θ	Add Network Location	
	Specify the location of your website	
	Type the address of the website, FTP site, or network location that this shortcut will open.	
	Internet or network address:	
	ftp://test14@proftp.drivehq.com	
	<u>View examples</u>	
	Next Cancel	

Specify the location of your website

From the "Specify the location of your website" window, enter the following address: ftp://USERNAME@proftp.drivehq.com/

then click on Next, it will create the FTP folder and prompt the following dialog:

## Add Network Location

)	Add Network Location
	What do you want to name this location?
	Create a name for this shortcut that will help you easily identify this network location:
	ftp://test14@proftp.drivehq.com.
	rtp://test14@proftp.unvenq.com.
	Type a name for this network location:
	proftp.drivehq.com
_	
	Next Cano

Click Next, it will then confirm the creation of FTP folder.

🔳 Ad	ld Network Location	×
0	Add Network Location	
	Completing the Add Network Location Wizard	
	You have successfully created this network location:	
	proftp.drivehq.com	
	A shortcut for this location will appear in Computer.	
	Open this network location when I click Finish.	
	Finish Cancel	

Click Finish to open the FTP folder.

X

<u> i</u> ft	p://ftp.o	drivehq.com/
$\bigcirc$	$\odot$	rtp://ftp.drivehq.com/
] File	e Edit	View Tools Help
	.og On A	
	<b>}~</b>	Could not login to the FTP server with the user name and password specified. FTP server: ftp.drivehq.com User name: test14.
		Password: After you log on, you can add this server to your Favorites and return to it easily.
	⚠	FTP does not encrypt or encode passwords or data before sending them to the server. To protect the security of your passwords and data, use WebDAV instead.
		Log on anonymously     Save password     Log On     Cancel

It will ask you the username and password. Just enter the information and click on the "Log On" button. (You might also want to check "Save password".) After you logon, it will open the FTP folder as shown below:

👔 ftp://ftp.drivehq.com/GroupWrite	/			
G V III ftp://ftp.drivehq.com/G	iroupWrite/	💌 🛃 Sear	rch	2
File Edit View Tools Help				
🔄 Organize 👻 📕 Views 💌				0
Favorite Links	Name TestMSWord.do	I v Size	Type           11 KB         Microsoft	Date modified - 5/24/2010 1:14 AM
More »			TTRD Microsoft	572 172010 111 FMM
Folders	×			
Desktop Administrator Public Computer Network () Internet Explorer				
<pre> ftp.drivehq.com     drivehqshare     GroupRead     GroupWrite     My documents     test </pre>				
Control Panel	- I - I			Þ
1 item		User: test14	😜 Internet	

FTP Folder example

You can then double click on a remote MS Office file (e.g. MS Word file) to open it. When you double click on it, it pops up a logon dialog as shown below:

## **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

é ft p	://proft	p.drivehq.com/GroupWrite/TestMSWord.docx - Windows Internet Explorer
9	] - (چ	ftp://proftp.drivehq.com/GroupWrite/TestMSWord.docx
🔶 Fa	avorites	Connecting
	Internet	Explorer
	?	To log on to this FTP server, type a user name and password.
		FTP server: proftp.drivehq.com
		User name:
		Password:
		After you log on, you can add this server to your Favorites and return to it easily.
		Log on anonymously
		Log On Cancel

Enter username, password and click on Log On, it will launch a web browser (e.g. Internet Explorer, then download and open the file. See below.



Click on Open, it will try to open the file; at this time, it will prompt you for the password again, as shown in the screenshot below.

<pre> ftp://proftp.drivehq.com/GroupWrite/TestMSWord </pre>				
🕞 📀 🗢 🔊 ftp://proftp. <b>drivehq.com</b> /GroupWrite/TestM				
🖕 Favorites 🔘 Connecting				
FTP Log On 🔗 🗙				
Log on to FTP Server proftp.drivehq.com				
Log on as:				
Password:				
*****				
FTP does not encrypt or encode passwords or data. To protect the security of your passwords and data, use HTTP (WebDAV) instead.				
OK Cancel				

Click on OK, it will open the file in MS Word.

You can then use MS Word to edit the file. After it is finished, you can try to save the file to the FTP Server again. Note you must navigate to the FTP folder and logon FTP account again. Please see the Save As dialog below to find where the FTP folder is located.

## **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Home Insert Page Layout Times New Rome * 12 * Paste * Clipboard * This is a test MS Wor If Microsoft Office is online MS Office doc From the "Show File" Directly". It will autor the file, you can click Test FTP folder work:	Image: Search         Image: Organize         Image: Organize </th <th>Image: state of the state of the</th>	Image: state of the
Page: 1 of 1 Words: 84 🥸 English (U	Tools  Save	Cancel

Save MS Office File to DriveHQ FTP Folder Directly

## 8.8 DriveHQ FTP Service usage scenarios

DriveHQ FTP service can be used for:

- Creating a corporate FTP Server (with multiple user accounts); or replacing your existing FTP Server;
- Transferring large files / a lot of files to a remote location, incl. to your client(s);
- Create FTP scripts to run at scheduled times;
- Store surveillance camera images store surveillance camera images to an offsite FTP server is more reliable and secure. Even if the camera is damaged, the recorded info can be kept on DriveHQ.com
- Backup files to a remote FTP server;

Please note free service users are limited to a maximum of 10-50 FTP logon times / day. Using DriveHQ FTP service for spreading bad contents, hacking or spying is strictly prohibited.

## 9. DriveHQ Online Backup

DriveHQ has bundled the Online Backup service with all other storage related services. If you have a DriveHQ account, you can use the Online Backup service immediately; otherwise, you can sign up a DriveHQ account. You must install DriveHQ Online Backup client software to use the automatic online backup feature.

## 9.1 The Advantages of Offsite / Remote Backup over Local Backup

DriveHQ Online Backup has a lot of advantages over your local backup solutions:

- Online (Offsite) backup is the only secure backup solution that can protect your data against major disasters, such as earthquake, flood, fire, or virus / hacking, etc.
- No need to buy or setup any backup device. You can backup / restore your data online easily;
- Backup and restore files from anywhere. No need to carry any backup device or change backup media, etc.
- Business backup that supports group accounts, multiple computers or multiple users;
- Backup servers when nobody is logged on; backup laptops / PCs with un-reliable Internet connections;
- Access, share or collaborate files remotely online using DriveHQ Online Storage service.
- DriveHQ uses multiple levels of redundancy to protect your data, which is also usually more secure and reliable than your own backup;
- DriveHQ has a state-of-the-art data center, which is co-located with Hurricane Electric. The facility has 24x7 onsite security and surveillance cameras, virtually unlimited network bandwidth, redundant network connections and redundant power supply, etc.
- DriveHQ Online Backup has a much lower overall cost, when you consider the hardware, software, setup, maintenance and reliability factors.

## 9.2 DriveHQ Online Backup main features

- Supports scheduled backup;
- Supports real-time backup;
- Supports incremental backup;
  - It only backs up files that are new or modified after last backup. Other files are automatically skipped.
- Supports Volume Shadow Copy, can backup open (locked) files (files that are being written to). This can be used to backup Outlook PST files or database files.
- Keep multiple file versions;
- Backup multiple PCs (for no extra licenses);
- Group Backup (backup multiple users' PCs);
- Supports HTTPS/SSL
- Data encryption (save encrypted data on DriveHQ cloud storage);
- Data compression for faster upload / download;
- Data caching for faster upload / download;

- Supports MagicUpload for very fast Upload in certain cases.
- Integrated with DriveHQ online storage & sharing system, can access, share and collaborate files with multiple users remotely. Can use FTP to access files backed up to DriveHQ.

For more info about DriveHQ Online Backup, please visit: <u>http://www.drivehq.com/backup/</u>. You can click on the Live Demo link to see a flash live demo.

## 9.3 Get Started with DriveHQ Online Backup

## 9.3.1. Download DriveHQ Online Backup client software from the location:

http://www.drivehq.com/backup/DownloadOnlineBackup.aspx

There are two versions of DriveHQ Online Backup: the 32-bit version and 64-bit version. In general, you should install the 32-bit version on 32-bit operating system and 64-bit version on 64-bit version operating system. In fact, the 64-bit version cannot be installed on 32-bit version operating system; the 32-bit version can be installed on 64-bit version operating system, however, some minor features may not work.

- How to find which version of Online Backup to install?

You can use this page to find your OS type and then install the right version software. Just open <u>Internet Explorer</u>, copy and paste the following URL:

http://www.drivehq.com/downloads/FindOSVersion.aspx

## 9.3.2 Install DriveHQ Online Backup on your computer

After you have downloaded the software, please double click on the installer file to launch the setup. Follow the wizard step by step and it will install DriveHQ Online Backup on your computer.

## Usually, it should be straight-forward to install DriveHQ Online Backup.

## 9.3.3 Trouble shoot DriveHQ Online Backup installer problems

On some computers, it might fail to install. In this case, please double check: (1) If you are installing the right version DriveHQ Online Backup. Read Step 1 more carefully. (2) Make sure you don't have any anti-virus / security software that blocked DriveHQ installer. (3) Make sure you have the right to install software on your computer. Some companies / organizations may not

allow employees / team members to install software on their computer. Public computers, such as those in a library, usually do not allow any users to install any software. (4) Some anti-virus / security software may allow you to download an EXE installer file; however, it might change the .exe file extension to a different extension. In this case, you need to change the file extension back to .exe before you double click on the installer file.

It is recommended to visit:

http://www.drivehq.com/backup/

and click on the "Online Backup Live Demo" link to see how the backup works.

## 9.3.4 Start DriveHQ Online Backup

The first time you start DriveHQ Online Backup on a computer, it will display the following dialog. If you already have a DriveHQ account, please select "Already a member" and then proceed to logon. Otherwise, please enter your email address to create a temp account.

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup 😨 😣			
Welcome to DriveHQ Online Backup, the best secure online backup software! Online Backup can automatically protect your data in real-time or in scheduled mode. Your data will be secure and reliable on DriveHQ storage.			
Not a member?			
Please input your email to start using Online Backup Email Address:			
Submit			

Run DriveHQ Online Backup for the 1<sup>st</sup> time

After enter your email address and click on Submit, the system will display the following dialog:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0



Temp account created screen

Click on the OK button, it will display the following dialog:

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup	- Log On	8
Online Backup Log	On	
User Name:	tmp1102798064	
Password:	****	
🔽 Remember logo	n info 🛛 🔽 Logon automatically	
I forgot my logon	info	
Log On	Sign Up Cancel	

DriveHQ Online Backup logon screen

Note this is a temporary account only. The DriveHQ system will automatically send you a welcome email, where you can find your temporary username and password. Usually the email is delivered within 10 minutes. Sometimes, it could take up to half an hour.

After you receive the email, you must follow the instruction to logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, then change your username / password to your own permanent username / password.
If you don't receive the welcome email, please make sure you check your junk / bulk / trash mail folders. Most likely your email server (or your ISP) has filtered / blocked DriveHQ email. If you still cannot receive the email, please contact your system administrator or ISP not to block DriveHQ emails, or try a different email address (using a different email server or different ISP).

After you logon DriveHQ Online Backup, it will display the DriveHQ Online Backup home page:



DriveHQ Online Backup software home page

### 9.4. Create Backup Task(s)

From DriveHQ Online Backup software home page, click on "Create a backup task", you will see the Create screen as shown below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0



DriveHQ create backup task screen

From the "Create backup task screen", you can choose to create 3 types of backup tasks:

- Quick Backup (Real-time backup task)
  - When click on this button, it will create a new Real-time backup in just one step. This option is recommended for a small folder with not too many files. If a folder has huge number of files (e.g. over 10000 files), it is recommended using the second option to create a scheduled backup task.
- Advanced Backup

Create a scheduled backup task with advanced options. You can create scheduled or realtime backup task using this option. You can use this option to backup any size folders.

- Email / Database Backup

This option is designed to backup large "open files". "Open files" are those files that are being open by other applications for writing. Such files are also referred as "locked". Microsoft Outlook PST files are usually "open files" as Outlook is running all the time; some database files are also "open" as the database server software is always running and

writing to the file. Usually you cannot copy / edit / delete an "open file" unless you close the application that opened the file.

This option not only can backup emails and database, but also can backup any folders that may contain "open files", e.g. QuickBooks data files, log files, etc.

### 9.4.1. Create Multiple Backup Tasks

Please note DriveHQ Online Backup might work differently from some other backup software. Some other backup software can only create one backup task, or create a single archive file that contains all backup source folders and files. Such approach is less efficient and less flexible than DriveHQ Online Backup.

**DriveHQ Online Backup allows a user to create multiple backup tasks.** A user can group different source folders to different backup tasks. Users can add / delete a backup task at any time. This makes each backup task smaller, more independent and more reliable. It is also more flexible as you can add / edit / delete a backup without affecting other backup tasks. Because of this consideration, <u>you can only select source folders and files in the same parent folder for each backup tasks</u>.

DriveHQ Online Backup does not archive all source folders and files into a single giant archive file. This makes DriveHQ Online Backup very efficient in supporting incremental backup. If it archives all source folders / files into a single file, then each time a file changes, the backup software would have to upload a gigantic archive file again, which could take days or weeks. Instead, DriveHQ Online Backup only needs to upload the changed or new file(s) only, which is very fast.

### 9.5. Create a backup task using Quick Backup

From the "Create a backup task" screen, click on Quick Backup button to create a simple Realtime backup task. You just need to select a backup source folder. Navigate the Windows Folder tree as shown below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0



Select a backup source folder for Quick Backup

Click on the Finish button after you have selected the source folder. It will prompt you with the following message:



Click on OK to start the backup task, and then it starts backing up the file. At the end, you will see the following screen:

🗊 DriveH	IQ Online Bac	kup - Enterprise	Edition - Wel	come FreeDrivehq!		9 🖷 🎗
Drive	HQ Onl	ine Backu	р on на	ome Create	Restore Manag	ge Tasks Options
7	Manage y	your backup tas	ik(s)		🗟 ¥iew Task	🔁 Refresh
	Name	Remote Size	Туре	Last Backup	Progress Time Left	Status
	Backup0	590 KB	Real-time	This task is running.	0% 57 min	Running
	Show Prog	/ k.	Migrate		Edit	Stop
		C	2003-2010 Dri	ve Headquarters, Inc. /	All rights reserved.	

Finished creating the first Quick Backup task

### 9.6. Create an Advanced Backup Task

From the "Create a backup task" screen, click on "Advanced Backup" button, it will start a wizard to guide you through creating a regular backup task. The first step is the same as Quick Backup; you need to select the source folder(s)/File(s).

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

iveHQ Online Backup - Enterprise Edition - V	Velcome FreeDrivehq! 🤪 😑 (
iveMQ Online Backup Enterprise Edition	Home Create Restore Manage Tasks Options
Create a backup task – Advanced Step 1. Select the files and folders to	
Browse	Select files and folders
Constant S     Constant S     My Computer      My Computer      My Computer      Coal Disk (C:)      Coal Disk (C:)      Over (E:)      My Network Places      Recycle Bin      DriveHQServiceManual      FM      OB      pic      Task	Name         Size         Date Modified           □ C:\         29,302,528           □ D:\         126,985,76
Help Me Select Files	Back Next Drive Headquarters, Inc. All rights reserved.

Select source folder(s) / file(s) for Advanced Backup

Again, please make sure you select the real physical folders / files. Certain folders are virtual folders and cannot be selected as source folders. (Network / My Network Place, etc.).

If you are not sure which folder to backup, you can also click on "Help Me Select Files" button at the bottom-left corner.

### 9.6.1 What files / folders should you back up?

DriveHQ recommends backup your documents files and multimedia files. In general, you should backup your "My Documents" folder and any other folders where you save your personal data or business data. Those files are most previous to you. If your computer (disk) crashes, you may lose your data permanently.

Unlike some other online backup software where you backup any files on your computer, DriveHQ does not recommend backing up the following files:

- Windows Operating System files;
- Files / folders in the "Program Files" folder;

- All system and application temporarily files;
- Files / folders in the Recycle Bin folder;
- System page files and hibernation files;

You don't need to backup Windows Operating System files because you can recover your operating system using your computer's recovery CD, or you can reinstall your operating system. DriveHQ Online Backup and any other Online Backup software cannot restore your operating system directly as they cannot run without a running operating system.

You usually don't need to backup your "Program Files" because you can more easily reinstall such software if there is any problem. DriveHQ Online Backup (and other Online Backup software) can backup files in the "Program Files" folders. However, restoring the files may not restore the software. A lot of programs require the software being installed on the computer using the Installer. Thus, restoring the software files may not work in this case. If your software does not require installation, then using DriveHQ Online Backup to backup (and restore) it will work fine.

DriveHQ's approach can save you a lot of storage space, so you don't need to order a lot of storage space on DriveHQ. This can keep your cost lower. Also, by reducing the amount of data to backup, your backup takes less time than other online backup software.

### 9.6.2 Set the backup schedule and save the backup task

After you select the source folder, click on Next to set the backup schedule as shown below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup - Enterprise Edition - Welcome FreeDrivehq! 📀 😑 😣
DriveHQ Online Backup Enterprise Edition Home Create Restore Manage Tasks Options
Create a backup task – Advanced backup
Step 2. Select a backup type. Skip step 3 and 4 if you choose real-time backup.
<ul> <li>Real-time backup</li> <li>Continuously backing up files and folders.</li> <li>Scheduled backup task to be run later.</li> </ul>
Step 3. Select a backup schedule option.
One time only Solarity
Weekly Select day of week: Sunday
Step 4. Please enter backup time.
Start the backup task at: 07 : 30
Back Next
© 2003-2010 Drive Headquarters, Inc. All rights reserved.

DriveHQ Online Backup Set Schedule screen

As you can see from the above screenshot, in Step 2, you can select real-time backup or scheduled backup; in Step 3, you can configure the task to run one-time only, or run it daily or weekly. If you run it weekly, you can also choose a day of week to run the backup task. In Step 4, you can choose the backup task start time. The valid time format is from: 00:00 to 23:59. The time uses your PC's local time.

Click on Next button in the Set Schedule screen, you will see the following screen:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

riveH(	Q Online Backup - Enterprise Edition - Welcome FreeDrivehq! 🌚 😑
rive	HQ Online Backup Enterprise Edition Home Create Restore Manage Tasks Option
•	Create a backup task – Advanced backup Step 5. Please input your backup task name and description.
	Backup task name:
	Backup1
	Description:
/	Backup1
	Exclude these files: (eg. *.bak tmp?.*)
	Exclude these sub-folders: (eg. tmpfolder*)
	This task is valid from 2010- 7-15 💌 to 2099- 1- 1 💌
	With Encryption Maximum number of versions to keep: 10
	Back Finish
	© 2003-2010 Drive Headquarters, Inc. All rights reserved.

Input task name screen

In the "Input Task Name" screen, you can enter the Task name and Task description. It is recommended using only alpha numeric characters in the task name. (a-b, A-B, 0-9).

### 9.6.3 Exclude certain files / folders from the backup source folder

In this screen, you can also set some advanced options, e.g.:

### **Exclude these files:**

You can enter the file name filter. You can enter multiple filters separated by "|". e.g.: you can enter:

\*.bak | tmp?.\* | ~\*.\*

Or you can even include the file path info:

### Temp\\*.\* | log\personal\\*.log

Files whose names matching these criteria will not be backed up to DriveHQ.

### **Exclude these folders:**

You can enter the folder name filter. You can enter multiple filters separated by "|", e.g. you can enter:

temp | tmp\* | logs\personal | backup\old\* The task is valid from to : enter the backup task valid time.

### 9.6.4 Online Backup with Data Encryption

In the "Input task name" screen, you check the checkbox "with encryption". If so, the backup task will encrypt data locally before upload the files to DriveHQ server. You must setup an encryption key first. If you have not done so, it will prompt you to enter an encryption key when it starts backing up your files.

Please note this feature uses DriveHQ's encrypted folder feature. When you upload a file to DriveHQ encrypted folder using DriveHQ FileManager or DriveHQ Online Backup, your files will be encrypted locally before they are uploaded to DriveHQ server. Your files remain encrypted on DriveHQ server. Thus it is extremely secure – more secure than SSL.

Note the encryption key is never sent to DriveHQ server. Therefore, if you lose your encryption key, even DriveHQ support team cannot restore files for you. So you must remember your encryption key. Also, if you change your encryption key, it will only affect files uploaded later. Files already uploaded will remain to be encrypted with old encryption key. Why is so? Because files were encrypted locally by your own computer, DriveHQ server cannot decrypt files already uploaded, nor can it encrypt those files using the new encryption key.

### 9.6.4 Maximum number of file versions to keep

DriveHQ Online Backup can keep multiple versions of your file(s). By default, the maximum number of versions to keep is set to 10. This means if you backup a file, and if the file is changed, it will save the current file as an old version, and then upload the updated file. It can save up to 10 versions (or more versions as you like) of the same file. This protects you from accidentally overwriting a file.

Keep multiple file versions may increase your storage usage. However, in most cases, it will only increase your storage usage by 10%-25%. The reasons are:

- (1) Most files are never changed. In this case, only one version of the files is saved. For example, most images files, exe files, pdf files, music files, video files are never changed.
- (2) Files that you change frequently are usually small files, such as text files, HTML files, MS Word files, Excel files. Even if you keep 10 versions of these files, it will not use a lot more storage space.

In certain special cases, the storage usage could be x times more if you keep a maximum of x versions. For example, if you backup only one big Outlook PST file of 500MB. Because the PST file is changed every time you receive a new email, delete an email or send an email, etc. So

when the backup task runs again, it will upload a newer version and save the older version, thus, it could use x times more storage space than if you only keep one version. In this case, we recommend keeping only 2 versions. Keeping only one version is not recommended as it is not safe enough.

Click on Finish, it will create the backup task and saves the backup task list info to DriveHQ server. After it is finishes, it displays the Manage Tasks screen:

iveHQ Online Ba	ackup - Enterprise	e Edition - Welcome F	reeDrivehq!			9
iveHQ On	line Backu	IP ion Home	Create Resto	re Ma	nage Tasks	Opt
→ Manage	your backup ta	usk(s)				
	,		@ ¥	iew Task	😂 Refres	h
Name	Remote Size	Туре	Last Backup	Progress	Time Left S	
Backup0	21 MB	Real-time	This task is running.	18%	2hr2min R	
Backup1	08	Backup daily schedule	Not backed up yet.		R	
<		Ш			>	
Show Pro	/ 1. K	Migrate	Delete	Edit	Start	
	(	© 2003-2010 Drive Head	quarters, Inc. All rights	reserved.		

Manage Tasks screen

The newly-created backup task is listed at the bottom. You can see the "Last Backup" column displays as "Not backed up yet". The task will run at the scheduled time. You can manually start the backup task by selecting it in the task list and clicking on the Start button.

### 9.7 Manage Existing Backup Tasks

### 9.7.1 Manage Tasks – Display the backup task list

You can easily manage your backup tasks using DriveHQ Online Backup. Just logon the backup client software, click on Manage Tasks tab, you will see the task list as shown above. The column "Remote Size" displays the backup set size. The remote size might be bigger than your total file size because:

- (1) You might have deleted some source files, which are not automatically deleted on DriveHQ server.
- (2) DriveHQ Online Backup can keep multiple versions of your files, which could use some extra storage space.

#### Last Backup

The task's last backup date: if the task is a real-time backup task and if no file(s) was changed in the backup source folder, then the backup date will not be updated.

#### **Backup Status:**

Displays the info about whether a task is ready, running or canceled.

#### The Refresh Button:

If the info is not up to date, you can click on the "Refresh" button.

-----

You can select a task and click on Delete / Edit / Start button.

### 9.7.2 Delete a Backup Task

From the Manage Tasks screen, select a task and click on Delete, it will pop up a dialog as follows:



Please make sure you read the message carefully before you click on "Yes" or "No". If you check the "Delete Backup-sets on Server", then files already backed up to DriveHQ.com online

storage will also be deleted. If you un-check the checkbox, then it will only delete the backup task info, but it will not delete files already backed up on DriveHQ server.

If you don't delete the backup sets on server, you can still delete the files using DriveHQ.com website or DriveHQ FileManager later. You will need to find where the files were backed up to and delete them from DriveHQ Online Storage.

### 9.7.3 Edit / modify a backup task

From Manage Tasks screen, select a task and click on Edit, it will open the edit task screen:

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup 😵	The source computer: JINGWANG
Edit the backup task.     Backup task name: Backup1     Description: Backup1     Select a backup type:     Real-time backup     Set backup schedule	Source folder: C:\ Source files and sub-folders: C:\ Source files and sub-folders: Config.Msi Documents and Settings home Intel MSOCache New Folder
<ul> <li>One time only</li> <li>Daily</li> <li>Weekly Select day of week:</li> <li>Friday</li> <li>Starting time:</li> <li>03 : 00</li> <li>This task is valid from</li> <li>2010- 7-15</li> <li>to</li> <li>2099- 1- 1</li> </ul>	pagefile.sys     Program Files     RECYCLER     Exclude these files:
Maximum number of versions to keep: 10 🗮	Exclude these sub-folders: (eg. *.bak   tmp?.*   tmpfolder*)

Edit backup task screen

You can change the backup task name, description, backup type, backup schedule, backup start time, valid period, max number of versions to keep, the exclude files / folders filters;

**You cannot change the "Encryption" setting of an existing backup task**; i.e. if a backup task was created without encryption; it cannot be changed to "with encryption" using this screen. This is because: Encryption is performed locally by your local computer using your own encryption key. If the files were already uploaded to DriveHQ, then it cannot be decrypted / encrypted by the server. To change the encryption setting, it would require you to delete files on server and upload them again. To avoid this confusion, you cannot change the encryption setting of an existing backup task. You can more easily delete the existing task and the backup sets on Server, then re-create a new backup task with encryption.

You can remove files / folders from the backup source folder; however, if you need to change the backup source (root / parent) folder, you must create a new backup task and delete this backup task. DriveHQ Online Backup is designed to group multiple source (root) folders in multiple backup tasks. You cannot select multiple folders / files from different source parent / root folders.

### 9.7.4 Delete un-used files on server:

After you have backed up your data, if you delete a file(s) in your backup source folder, a lot of other online backup programs would delete the file(s) in the destination folder after a few days, which defeats the purpose of backup. DriveHQ Online Backup is safer on this. It never automatically deletes files backed up on Server. This offers far better protection than other backup solutions.

Without deleting those files on server, you might lose some storage space. You can manually purge these files and reclaim the wasted storage space. Just click on the "Delete un-used files on server" button, it will then delete those files on DriveHQ server whose corresponding source files have been deleted.

#### 9.7.5 Show Backup Progress Window

When you have a backup task running, the Show Progress button will be enabled. A small progress bar will also display in the Task List.

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Manage	your backup ta	sk(s)		_	
-				🖻 View Task	🤁 Refrest
Name	Remote Size	Туре	Last Backup	Progress Time Left	Status
📑 Backup0 👘	590 KB	Real-time	This task is running.	0% 57 min	Running

Manage Tasks screen when a task is running

You can select the running backup task and click on "Show Progress" button to display the detailed Progress Window.

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🕑 Task Backup0 is	s running.				
Initial backup will up subsequent task will uploaded again. You	be much faster,	as only the	changed file	es will be	
Estimated time left:	49 min ( 3 MB	of 72 MB Upl	oaded )		
Transfer rate:	24.2 KB/sec				
Information:	Transferring data.				
Uploading file:	c:\documents and	settings\jingwa	ang\my docur	ments\my m	usic\i
File Path	Size	Progress	Time Left	Status	^
\67FE00D29308CBD9-3	351 374 KB(37	0%	00:00:00	Waiting	
\67FE00D29308CBD9-	1 1	0%	00:00:00	Waiting	
\67FE00D29308CBD9-/	1 1	0%	00:00:00	Waiting	
	1 1	0%	00:00:00	Waiting	
\67FE00D29308CBD9-		0%	00:00:00	Waiting	
\67FE00D29308CBD9- \67FE00D29308CBD9-	1 1			Waiting	<b>v</b>
\67FE00D29308CBD9-	1 1	0%	00:00:00		

Detailed Backup Progress Window

In the detailed progress Window, you can see the total amount of data to upload; estimated time left and estimated total backup time; the transfer rate in KB/sec. Note 1KB/sec = 8Kbps. It also describes the detailed backup actions being performed, and which file is being uploaded.

The upload file list displays all files that will be (or are being) uploaded to DriveHQ server. The progress window is not only useful in providing detailed progress info, but also it can be used in trouble shooting any possible upload problems. If a backup task started fine and successfully uploaded some files, but fails later for unknown reason, then the Progress Window can provide more detailed info about which file(s) failed to upload. You can manually restart the backup task from the Manage Tasks window. If it fails again at the same file(s), then the particular file might have caused the upload problem. You can provide the detailed info to DriveHQ support staff for more trouble-shooting.

From the Progress Window, you can also pause the backup task. If you pause a task, then no other task(s) can run until you resume the task.

### 9.8 Email / Database Backup

In the "Create" main screen, click on the "Email / Database Backup" button, it pops up the following dialog:

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup 5.0
We would suggest you to use DriveHQ Email Manager for email backup! It is the first software that can manage your emails like files, drag-&-drop or automatically backup your Outlook / Outlook Express / Windows Mail in real-time or scheduled times. It can also help migrate your emails from one computer to another computer.
Don't show this message again.
More Info Continue

Email / Database Backup screen

Please read the message carefully. If you just want to backup your Outlook / Outlook Express emails, you can use DriveHQ EmailManager, which is more efficient than DriveHQ Online Backup in backing up many emails. Now if you want to Continue, just click on the Continue button; otherwise, click on More Info.

Click on the Continue button, it will go to the following screen:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

ard helps you backup Ou	tlook Email files and (		
elect your source folder:	Microsoft Outlool	<	•
folder:			
uments and Settings\JingW	ang\Local Settings\App	lication Data\Microsoft	Out Browse
task name:			
ft Outlook E-mail Backup			
ion:			
ft Outlook E-mail Backup			
n Encryption	Maximum number	of versions to keep:	2
	zard helps you backup Ou ited before files are backe select your source folder: folder:	zard helps you backup Outlook Email files and outlook temail files are backed up to DriveHQ.         select your source folder:         folder:         suments and Settings\JingWang\Local Settings\App         task name:         oft Outlook E-mail Backup         tion:         oft Outlook E-mail Backup	select your source folder: Microsoft Outlook folder: uments and Settings\JingWang\Local Settings\Application Data\Microsoft task name: oft Outlook E-mail Backup tion: oft Outlook E-mail Backup

As you can see, the software can automatically locate your Outlook data folder. So you don't need to click the Browse button.

If you want to backup other email client or database, you can click on the drop-down box and select "Other email client or database". You will need to click on Browse button to manually select the source folder.

The recommended backup schedule for this type of backup tasks is weekly and keeps only 2 versions to save storage space. The reasons are:

- Outlook PST files tend to be very large, so as any database files. Backing up a very large file could take a very long time; it could take more than 24 hours to upload a big PST or database file.
- DriveHQ Online Backup supports incremental file backup; it also supports resuming. However, in the case of Outlook or database backup, incremental backup is almost impossible and inherently more risky. Your PST file or database file can be changed dramatically. It can be changed at any place within your file. E.g. if you receive a new email, delete an old email, move emails from one mailbox to another mailbox, create a new contact, auto archive your emails, send a new email, compact your mailboxes. A lot

of such actions will dramatically change your PST files, making it not suitable for incremental backup. Similarly, a database file can also be changed dramatically. Inserting, deleting, updating records will all cause the database file being changed dramatically as it affects the data storage and indexes.

Therefore, each backup will be a full backup. If you need to backup your Outlook every day, please use DriveHQ EmailManager, which is more efficient in this case. If you need to backup your database every day, then you can backup your database locally everyday using some incremental backup tool. E.g. Microsoft SQL Server has a native tool to backup data incrementally. You can then backup the "incremental backup data" to DriveHQ every day.

- DriveHQ can keep multiple old versions. However, it will use more storage space. When you backup regular files, most files will never be changed. So even if you set to keep a max of 10 versions, most files will have only one version. So it will not use a lot more storage space. However, in Outlook and Database backup case, it could use x times more storage if you keep x versions.

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup - Enterprise Edition - Welcome FreeDrivehq! 🕞 🤤	8
DriveHQ Online Backup Enterprise Edition Home Create Restore Manage Tasks Option	ons
Create an email / database backup task – Set the schedule     Select a backup schedule option.	
<ul> <li>One time only</li> <li>Daily</li> <li>Weekly Select day of week: Sunday</li> </ul>	
Please enter backup time.	
Start the backup task at: 11 : 30	
Please enter valid date.	
This task is valid from 2010- 6-15 <b>v</b> to 2099- 1- 1 <b>v</b>	
© 2003-2010 Drive Headquarters, Inc. All rights reserved.	

After you click on Next, it will display the following screen:

You can select a backup schedule. Note the Real-time option is not available as described above. Click on Finish to create and save the new backup task. So click on Finish, it will pop up an information dialog as below:

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup 5.0 🛛 😵
Your email or database backup task has been created successfully.
NOTE: If you have a large number of e-mails, the backup task can take a long time depending on your Internet connection. A weekly backup is recommended. You also can take advantage of Online Backup's incremental backup feature: divide your e-mail data files into many smaller folders. If your e-mail application allows you to manually create new/multiple archive folders, periodically doing so can improve performance and reduce backup times versus repeating the backup of old archived data each time.
🔲 Don't show this message again.
ОК

Email / Database backup information dialog

Click on OK to close the dialog and finish saving the backup task.

### 9.9 Restore Files / Folders

After you have created a backup task and successfully run the backup task once, you can restore your files / folders. DriveHQ offers many ways / options for you to restore files:

- You can restore your files / folders to the original location, or you can specify a different location to restore.
- You can restore files / folders to the same computer or any other computer.
- You can restore the whole backup task, or you can restore a single file / folder or multiple files / folders.
- You can restore an older version file;
- You can restore the whole backup task to a time before certain time.

In addition, you can restore files using DriveHQ.com website, DriveHQ FileManager client software or any FTP client software.

127

To restore files, you can simply logon DriveHQ Online Backup client software, click on the Restore tab; you will see the following screen:

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup - Enterprise I	dition - Welco	me FreeDrivehq!			9 🗕 🛛
Driverio Online Backup Enterprise Editio	) n Hom	e Create F	Restore	Manage Tasks	Options
Recover your data files	and folders				
ist of tasks	Name	Original Location	Size	Backup Date	
Microsoft Outlook E-mail Backup     Backup0	Outlook	C:\Documents and	10,999 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:19	
<					
Show History	Restore to Orig		A	re to New Location	
©	2003-2010 Drive	Headquarters, Inc. All	rights reserv	ved.	

DriveHQ Online Backup Restore screen

From the Restore screen, you can see the task list in the left-hand side. On the right-hand side, you can see the list of files and folders backed up by the selected backup task.

### **9.9.1 Restore all files / folders**

If you want to restore all files / folders backed up by a backup task, then select the backup task in the left-hand side, right click on the task name, it will pop up a menu as shown on the screenshot below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

		- Welcome FreeDrivehq!			•
nverių Oni	ine Backup Enterprise Edition	Home Create	Restore	Manage Tasks	Optio
Recover	your data files and fo	lders			
🛅 list of tasks	Name	Original Location	Size	Backup Date	
Microsoft     Backup0	Outlook E-mail Backup 📗 👝 👝	ic and a	10,999 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:19	
	Restore to a new locati				
/					
× 1					
<					
					_
Show Histo	Resto	re to Original Location	Restor	e to New Location	

Restore the whole backup task screen

Click on the popup menu item "Restore to the original location" or "Restore to a new location", you can restore the whole task. If you select "Restore to the original location", it will pop up a new dialog as below:

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup	8
Restore the latest version	
Restore the version before:          6/ 2/2010       5:50:40 PM	
OK Cancel	

Restore the whole backup task version

From the above screen, you can restore the latest version files, or you can restore an older version of all files before certain time. The file time uses your local time. Click on OK, it will start restoring the files. Dependent on your task size, it could take a very long time to restore. Once it finishes, it displays the following screen:

# Drive Headquarters™

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0



Restore finished confirmation screen

If you select "Restore to a new location", it will ask you to browse a new local folder; the rest is the same as restore to the original location.

### 9.9.2 Restore the selected files / folders

From the Restore tab, on the right-hand side, you can see files / folders backed up to DriveHQ. You can double click on a folder name to navigate to the sub-folders and files in it. To go back to

Name

the parent level folder, just double click on 🛅...

Once you locate the file(s) / folder(s) you want to restore, you can select the file(s)/folder(s). You can hold down the Ctrl key or Shift key to select multiple files and folders.

After you have selected the files / folders to restore, you can either right click on the folder(s)/file(s), or click on the button "Restore to Original Location" or "Restore to New Location".

### 9.9.3 Restore older version files

You can use DriveHQ Online Backup to restore old version files. To do so, from the Restore tab, click on the task name, then navigate the folders and locate the file that you want to restore. Click on the filename to select the file. Note if you want to restore an older version, then you can only select one file. After you select one file, the "Show History" button at the bottom left corner will become enabled as shown below.

Drive	HQ Online Backup - Enterprise	Edition - Welco	me FreeDrivehq!			
Driv	eHQ Online Backu Enterprise Editi		e Create	Restore	Manage Tasks	Options
(	Recover your data files	and folders				
	🛅 list of tasks	Name	Original Location	Size	Backup Date	
	Microsoft Outlook E-mail Backup			0.00	backap back	
	Backup0	Excel1.xls	C:\Work\Excel1.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	>
		Excel10.xls	C:\Work\Excel10.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	
		Excel11.xls	C:\Work\Excel11.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	
		Excel12.xls	C:\Work\Excel12.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	
		Excel13.xls	C:\Work\Excel13.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	
		Excel14.xls	C:\Work\Excel14.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	
		Excel15.xls	C:\Work\Excel15.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	
		Excel16.xls	C:\Work\Excel16.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	2
		Excel17.xls	C:\Work\Excel17.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	
		Excel18.xls	C:\Work\Excel18.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	2
		Excel19.xls	C:\Work\Excel19.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	2
		Excel2.xls	C:\Work\Excel2.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	2
		Excel20.xls	C:\Work\Excel20.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	2
		Excel3.xls	C:\Work\Excel3.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	2
		Excel4.xls	C:\Work\Excel4.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	2
		Excel5.xls	C:\Work\Excel5.xls	17 KB	07/15/2010 14:33:32	2 💙
	< · · · >	<	1111		()	
	Show History	Restore to Orig	ginal Location	Res	tore to New Locatio	n
1	/	2002-2010 Drive	Headquarters, Inc. All	l rights roo	anved	
	(	2003-2010 Drive	neauquarters, Inc. Al	ringnus res	erveu.	

Restore old version files

You can click on the Show History button or right click on the file and click on the "History" menu. It will open a "File version history dialog" as shown below.

🗊 File vo	ersion history		8
C:\Work\Exc	el1.xls		
Version	Backup Date	Size	Restore to
2	07/15/2010 14:46:57	17 KB	Original Location
1	07/15/2010 14:33:28	17 KB	
			Restore to New Location
			Delete
			Close

File version history screen

You can then select a version to restore or to delete.

Note, if you want to restore an older version of all files in the backup task, then you must select the whole backup task to restore. Please read the previous section for more details.

### 9.10 DriveHQ Online Backup Options

The "Options" tab on DriveHQ Online Backup client software has the following functions:

- My Profile: Show / Edit User profile info. You can also show / edit user profile on DriveHQ.com website.

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

📷 DriveHQ Online Backup - Enterprise Edit	ion - Welcome FreeD	rivehq!	9 🖷 😣
DriveHQ Online Backup Enterprise Edition	Home Cre	ate Restore Man	age Tasks Options
My DriveHQ Account			Log Out 🖏
K Profile	User Name:	FreeDrivehq	
Account Balance     Change Password	User Type:	Free Member	
My Options	Email Address:	·····	
Subscription	First Name: Last Name:		
Encrypted Folder	Home Number:		
System Options			
🚴 Group Account	Visit files on D	riveHQ.com	
175		Save Change	Close
© 200	3-2010 Drive Headquarte	rs, Inc. All rights reserved.	

- Account Balance:
  - Check your DriveHQ account balance;
  - You can also click on Refresh button to refresh your account balance.
  - You can also click on Deposit to make a service payment or deposit money into your DriveHQ account for annual or future service charges;
- Change password: You can change your DriveHQ account password. You cannot change your username. If you are a sub-user of a group account, then the group admin user(s) can change your username. Otherwise, you cannot change your username directly. You can contact DriveHQ customer support to change your username.
- My Options: You can configure:
  - Remember logon info. If checked, you don't need to enter your username / password to logon again. It must be checked for automatic backup;
  - Automatically sign in: If checked, it will automatically logon DriveHQ.com once the application (service) is started. It must be checked for automatic backup;
  - Enable Volume Shadow Copy:

- It must be checked to backup open files (locked files, or files being written to)
- You can also configure a task to re-start automatically if it didn't run at the scheduled time.
- Caching: You can set the maximum cache folder size. By default, it is set to 1GB. You can change the cache size and cache folder location.

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup - Enterprise Edi	tion - Welcome FreeDrivehq! 🧔 🗕 🗴
DriveHQ Online Backup Enterprise Edition	Home Create Restore Manage Tasks Options
Hy DriveHQ Account	Log Out 🖏
K My Profile	Remember logon info Automatically sign in
Account Balance	Enable volume shadow copy
Change Password	A volume shadow copy allows files to be backed up even though they are in the process of being written to.
My Options	If a task didn't run at the scheduled time: Automatically start it in 1 🛨 minutes
Subscription	Start it at the next scheduled time
Encrypted Folder	Delay 30 = seconds before processing the changes for realtime backup
System Options	Maximum cache file size: 1000 🍧 MB
Event Log	Location of the local cache folder:
🔏 Group Account	C:\Documents and Settings\LocalService\Appl change
	Gave Change View Cache Files Clear All Cache Files
© 200	03-2010 Drive Headquarters, Inc. All rights reserved.

### My Options screen

At the bottom of the "My Options" screen, you can see 3 buttons: "Save Change", "View Cache Files", "Clear All Cache Files".

The cache folder is used to speed up download and upload speed; if the same file has been uploaded / downloaded, it will not download / upload again. It is also needed to save the "shadow copy files". When you backup a file that is being written to, DriveHQ Online Backup will create a shadow copy, i.e. a snapshot of the file at the time. It saves the file in the cache folder and then backup the file from the cache folder to DriveHQ server.

### Subscription:

DriveHQ has bundled all storage related services into the same premium service packages. So you will get Online Backup, Online Storage, sharing and Collaboration, FTP Server Hosting, Files / Static Website Hosting, Folder Synchronization services and features for no extra charge.

You can click on the Subscribe button to order DriveHQ paid services online.

For more info about service subscriptions, please visit the DriveHQ.com website manual.

#### **Encrypted Folder:**

Click on Encrypted Folder, you will see the screen as shown below.

🗃 DriveHQ Online Backup - Enterprise Editi	on - Welcome FreeDrivehq! 🤋 😑 🗴
DriveHQ Online Backup Enterprise Edition	Home Create Restore Manage Tasks Options
Hy DriveHQ Account	Log Out 🖏
K My Profile	The DriveHQ Encrypted Folder offers an un-matched level of
Account Balance	security and privacy. Encryption offers both secure transmission and storage of your files. Files are encrypted with your private key by DriveHQ Online Backup if the task is configured to "
Change Password	Backup with encryption". In this case, files are backed up to "My Encrypted Data" folder. When you download files from this folder, the encrypted files are downloaded and decrypted by Online
My Options	Backup (or FileManager) transparently. You cannot download or manage encrypted files with IE or FTP.
Subscription	You can change the encryption key. The new key will only
Encrypted Folder	apply to new uploaded files.
System Options	New Encryption Key:
Event Log	Confirm Encryption Key:
& Group Account	
	Save Change Close
© 2003	-2010 Drive Headquarters, Inc. All rights reserved.

Encrypted Folder screen

DriveHQ Encrypted Folder is an advanced feature. Please note DriveHQ online service is already very secure by supporting HTTPS/SSL or FTP over SSL. Moreover, DriveHQ Online Backup and DriveHQ FileManager supports "Encrypted Folder". Once you turn it on, you must

also enter a secure encryption key. This key is extremely important so you must keep it safely and not lose it. Note when you upload files to DriveHQ encrypted folder:

\My Documents\My Encrypted Data

Your files are encrypted locally using your secure private encryption key. The encryption key is never sent to DriveHQ server. So your files will remain encrypted on DriveHQ system. This way, it is extremely secure. But be careful: if you lose your encryption key, nobody can help you decrypt your files.

The encryption key is automatically cached in your local PC. So if you upload files / download files using DriveHQ client software, the files will be transparently encrypted and decrypted. You don't need to enter the encryption key again and again.

Another thing to notice is: once a file is uploaded to DriveHQ encrypted folder, the file is encrypted with the current encryption key. If you change your encryption, it will not affect files already uploaded to DriveHQ.com. To change the encryption key for these files, you must delete them and upload them again. If you don't do so, please make sure to remember / keep all encryption keys.

System Options:

- "Automatically run when I logon Windows": this option can be used to turn it on / off.

- Show hidden files / folders: this option allows DriveHQ Online Backup to display the hidden files. You must check it to backup hidden files.

- Automatically start minimized: after you reboot Windows, the DriveHQ Online Backup GUI software will start as minimized. DriveHQ Online Backup is designed to set and forget. So run minimized will not affect your other work.

- Use SSL: turn this option on to upload / download files using HTTPS/SSL

- Register Shell Menu: This will add DriveHQ Online Backup menu to Windows Explorer.

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup - Enterprise Editio	on - Welcome FreeDrivehq! 📀 🗕 🗴
DriveHQ Online Backup Enterprise Edition	Home Create Restore Manage Tasks Options
My DriveHQ Account	Log Out 🖏
<ul> <li>My Profile</li> <li>Account Balance</li> <li>Change Password</li> <li>My Options</li> <li>Subscription</li> <li>Encrypted Folder</li> <li>System Options</li> <li>Event Log</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Automatically run when I log on to Windows</li> <li>Show hidden files and folders</li> <li>Automatically start minimized</li> <li>Use SSL</li> <li>Register Shell Menu</li> </ul>
Group Account © 2003-	-2010 Drive Headquarters, Inc. All rights reserved.

### Event Log:

This function is very useful to monitor your Backup tasks. See the screenshot below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup - Enterprise Editi	tion - Welcome FreeDrivehq! 🧿 😑	8
DriveHQ Online Backup Enterprise Edition	Home Create Restore Manage Tasks Option	5
My DriveHQ Account	Log Out 🖏	
K My Profile	Send backup status report to: freedrivehq@gmail.com	
Account Balance	When an error happens After a task finishes	
Change Password	Event type Warning	
My Options	Frror	
Subscription	Type         Task         Date Time         Description           Wormal         Backup0         12/02/2009 13:06:13         Start backup task.	
Encrypted Folder	Operation (12/02/2009 13:12:15)     Start backup task.     ■     Operation (12/02/2009 13:13:49)     Start backup task.	
System Options	Normal Backup0 07/15/2010 13:39:01 Start backup task. Normal Backup1 07/15/2010 14:14:41 Start backup task.	
Event Log	Wormal         Backup1         07/15/2010 14:14:48         Finish backup task.           Normal         Backup0         07/15/2010 14:15:51         Start backup task.         •	
🔏 Group Account		
	Save Change Details Clear All	
© 2003	03-2010 Drive Headquarters, Inc. All rights reserved.	

Event Log screen

As shown in the screenshot, you can configure it to:

- Send backup status report. It can send to any email address, or multiple email addresses separated by ",".
- Configure which info to log and when to log.

This feature allows users to receive daily backup status report. This is particularly useful if you use DriveHQ Online Backup to backup servers where nobody is logged on the computer. (so nobody will see if it is working properly.)

Group Account:

If your DriveHQ account is not a group account, you will see the following screen:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0



Group Account Screen for Non-group Admin User

You can click on **Free Upgrade to Group Account** to upgrade your account to be a group account. A free group admin user only can create one sub-user.

If you are a group administrator, you will see the following screen:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🚮 DriveHQ Online Backup - Enterprise Editi	ion - Welcome x! 🤋 😑 😵
DriveHQ Online Backup Enterprise Edition	Storage usage: 99% Home Create Restore Manage Tasks Options
My DriveHQ Account	Log Out 🖏
<ul> <li>My Profile</li> <li>Account Balance</li> <li>Change Password</li> <li>My Options</li> <li>Subscription</li> <li>Encrypted Folder</li> </ul>	Using DriveHQ Group Admin tool, you can: - Create / add / edit / delete sub-user; - Allocate storage space and download bytes; - Share different folders to different users, sub-groups and contact groups with different permissions; - Automatically sync folders among user accounts.
System Options  Event Log  Group Account	View Group Backup Status           Launch Group Admin Tool         Close           3-2010 Drive Headquarters, Inc. All rights reserved.

Group Account Screen for Group Admin User

You can view your group backup status and manager your group members through the DriveHQ web.

### 9.11. Advanced features and technical information

DriveHQ Online Backup has many advanced features; it is also integrated with DriveHQ Online Storage & Sharing, FTP Server Hosting services, offering far more features and services.

DriveHQ Online Backup advanced features incl.:

- Run as Windows (NT) service; it can backup your computers, incl. server computers, even if nobody is logged on;
- Can backup network-mapped drives / network shared folders;
- Can backup multiple computers using the same DriveHQ account;
- Support group account service; can backup multiple computers of a group of users;
- Files backed up on DriveHQ.com can be accessed using DriveHQ.com website, DriveHQ FileManager and FTP.

### 9.11.1. Run as Windows (NT) Service:

- DriveHQ Online Backup has two processes: DriveHQBackup.exe and DHQBackupSvc.exe.

**DriveHQBackup is the** <u>GUI program</u>, which is used to create / manage / monitor backup tasks, check or update user account info and order service subscription, etc. Once the user account is setup and backup tasks are created, the GUI program is not needed to run the backup task.

**DHQBackupSvc is the backend** <u>service program</u>, which is used to schedule and actually run the backup tasks. Once the GUI program has created the backup tasks, this service program is responsible to run the backup tasks at the scheduled times.

By separating the backup software into two programs, DriveHQ Online Backup can backup a computer even if nobody is logged on. The DHQBackupSvc.exe service program can automatically start before anybody logs on.

When you start DriveHQ Online Backup GUI program, it will try to connect to DHQBackupSvc.exe process. If it fails to connect, then backup cannot be performed. You must check if the backup service has been started. To locate DriveHQ Online Backup service, please go to Administrative Tools  $\rightarrow$  Services. See the screenshot below:

🖏 Services						
<u>File Action Viev</u>	v <u>H</u> elp					
🗢 🔿   🛅   🛅	💽 🗟 📝 📷 🕨 🔳 🕪					
🤹 Services (Local	🔕 Services (Local)					
	DriveHQ Backup Service	Name 🔺	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On A: 🔺
		🤹 Distributed Link Tracki	Maintains links betwe	Started	Automatic	Local Syst
	Stop the service	🤹 Distributed Transactio	Coordinates transact	Started	Automatic (	Network S
	<u>Restart</u> the service	🔍 DNS Client	The DNS Client servic	Started	Automatic	Network 5
		🔍 DriveHQ Backup Service	DriveHQ Online Back	Started	Automatic	Local Syst
	Description:	🤹 DriveHQ FileManagerFun	DriveHQ FileManager	Started	Automatic	Local Syst
	DriveHQ Online Backup NT service	🔍 Encrypting File Syste	Provides the core file		Manual	Local Syst
	process	🔍 Extensible Authentica	The Extensible Authe	Started	Manual	Local Syst
		Function Discovery Pr	The FDPHOST servic	Started	Manual	Local Serv
		Function Discovery Re	Publishes this comput		Manual	Local Serv
		🔍 Google Update Servic	Keeps vour Gooale s		Automatic	Local Svsl 🚬
		•				
	Extended / Standard /					

### DriveHQ Online Backup service

When you install DriveHQ Online Backup client software, this service will also be installed. It will start automatically.

By default, this service runs as the "local system" account, which has access to all local files / folders, but it cannot access remote folders / files. Also this account is different from the current Windows logon user.

### 9.11.2. Backup Network-mapped Drives

As mentioned above, by default, DriveHQ Online Backup service program logs on as the "local system" account, which cannot access a network folder. You can easily change the service logon username to a user who has the right access to the shared folder(s). (usually your own account).

To change the service logon username, please double click on "DriveHQ Backup Service" in the Services window. It will open the properties dialog, click on the "Log On" tab, it will display the following dialog:

DriveHQ Backup Service Properties (Local Computer)		×
General Log On Reco	overy Dependencies	
Log on as:		
<ul> <li>Local System account</li> <li>Allow service to interact with desktop</li> </ul>		
	YOUR_Windows_USERNAME	Browse
Password:	•••••	
Confirm password:	•••••	
Help me configure user account log on options.		
	OK Cancel	<u>Apply</u>

Change the Service Logon username
From this screen, you can check "This account" radio button, and then enter a username and password to logon. Note this username is your Windows username, not DriveHQ username. You need to make sure this username can access the network shared folder / drive.

DriveHQ Backup Service	Properties (Local Computer)	×
General Log On Reco	very Dependencies	
Log on as:		
Local System account Allow service to intervice to intervice to intervice.		
	YOUR_Windows_USERNAME	<u>B</u> rowse
Password:	•••••	
<u>C</u> onfirm password:	•••••	
Help me configure user a	account log on options.	
	OK Cancel	

After you've finished, click on Ok to save the changes. Then you need to stop the service and restart it to refresh the change.

#### 9.11.3 Backup multiple computers using the same DriveHQ account

You can backup multiple computers using the same DriveHQ account. Even if you backup the same folders on Computer1 and Computer2 to the same DriveHQ account, the backup tasks won't overwrite each other. In fact, each backup task is associated with a computer. If you create a backup task Task1 on Computer1 and a task2 on Computer2, then on Computer 1, you will see two backup tasks:

- Task1;
- Computer2.Task2

See the screenshot below, the task "W2008-SVR64.Backup2" is a task created on a different computer with computer name "W2008-SVR64" and task name "backup2". When you select this task on this computer, you cannot start the task, nor can you edit the task. But you can view or migrate the task.

📑 DriveH	IQ Online Backup - Enterpris	e Edition - Welc	ome FreeDrive	ehq!	_		
Drive	HQ Online Backu Enterprise Edit	I <b>P</b> tion Hor	ne Create	Restore	Manage	Tasks	Options
Ţ	Manage your backup ta	ask(s)		🗊 ¥iew Tas	ik j	😌 Refresh	
	Name	Remote Size	Туре	Last Backup	Progress	Time Left	
	Microsoft Outlook E-mail Backup	11 MB		07/15/2010 14:33:19			
	BRUCE-PC.Backup0	08	Real-time	07/15/2010 15:36:14			
	<	1111				>	
	Show Progress	Migrate	Delete	e View		Start	
		© 2003-2010 Driv	e Headquarters, 1	Inc. All rights reserved	d.		

Manage Tasks screen showing a task created on a different computer

Click on the "View" button, it opens the following dialog:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

💱 DriveHQ Online Backup 😵	The source computer: BRUCE-PC
• View the backup task on machine BRUCE-PC.	Source folder: E:\
Backup task name: Backup0	Source files and sub-folders:
Description: Backup0	🗹 🖻 Test
Select a backup type: Real-time backup Scheduled backup Set backup schedule One time only Daily Weekly Select day of week: Sunday	
Starting time: 08 : 30	Exclude these files:
This task is valid from 2010- 6-15 v to 2099- 1- 1 v Maximum number of versions to keep:	Exclude these sub-folders: (eg. *.bak   tmp?.*   tmpfolder*)
Save Cancel	Delete un-used files on server

View a backup task created on a different computer

Note you cannot edit the task because the task is created on a different computer.

#### 9.11.4 Migrate a Backup Task to a Different Computer

To migrate a backup task created on a different computer to this computer, there are several ways. The easiest way is to use the "Migrate" feature. From Manage Tasks screen, select the task created on a different computer, then click on "Migrate" button. DriveHQ Online Backup will display the following dialog:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup	8
Higrate a task to this computer	
You are about to move the following Please note: 1) The latest backup set will be rest	
current source folder.	v source folder has the same files as the only backup the new source folder on the ger run on the previous computer.
Backup task name: Backup0 Description: Backup0	
Previous source	New source Please select a new source
Computer: BRUCE-PC Source folder: E:\	folder on this computer:
	Browse
Migrate to current com	puter Cancel

Please read the message on this screen carefully:

- (1) The latest backup set on DriveHQ server will be restored to the current computer;
- (2) After it finishes migration, the task on the old computer will no longer be valid and should not be started.
- (3) The migrated backup task will only backup the new backup source folder(s).

Click on "Migrate to current computer" button, it will starts restoring the backup set to your new backup source folder(s). After it finishes, the task is successfully migrated. The confirmation message might be a little different as shown below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🗊 DriveHQ Online Backup - Enterprise Edition - Welcome FreeDrivehq! 🤋 🗕 🗴
DriveHQ Online Backup Enterprise Edition Home Create Restore Manage Tasks Options
Your backup set has been successfully restored. Please note DriveHQ uses incremental restore so it can be very fast to restore your files.
To restore more backup sets, please click the "Restore more files" button.
Restore more files OK
© 2003-2010 Drive Headquarters, Inc. All rights reserved.

Just click on OK to finish it.

#### 9.11.5 More efficient way of migrating a backup task

If you have backed up a lot of data with the backup task, then it could take a long time to restore all files. A more efficient method is to Copy your old backup source folder(s)/files(s) to the new backup source location on the new computer. You can copy the files/folders using network mapped drive, or using a USB external drive. It is usually much faster than downloading all files from DriveHQ.com.

Once you have put the latest backup source files / folders to the new backup location, then you can start migrating the task. DriveHQ Online Backup (and DriveHQ FileManager) can automatically skip file uploading / downloading if the same file has existed in the destination folder. This can save you a lot of time in restoring the backup task.

#### 9.12 Group Backup for Businesses

DriveHQ services are designed for high-end users and businesses. A high percentage of our paying users are business users. Many businesses find our Group Account service is extremely useful and affordable. The group account service is free, which offers 1 free sub-user license. To become a group account, you can logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, go to My Account page and click on Group Account, then upgrade to a group account for free. If you need more user accounts, you can order more user licenses online. The price is extremely affordable at only \$6/user/year (\$0.5/user/month!).

DriveHQ group account service can be used to backup multiple user accounts; each user account can also backup multiple computers. The benefits of group account service include:

- The group owner account (and / or group administrator accounts) can centrally create and manage all sub-user accounts;
- Only one user the group account owner, needs to order DriveHQ subscription services; all sub-users are also automatically considered as premium users;
- The whole group can either divide the storage space among group members; or all group members can share the same storage space by using folders shared by the group owner account.
- For companies have multiple locations or divisions, DriveHQ group account service also supports Sub-groups; each location or divisions can be assigned with a sub-group.
- The group owner user can logon as any sub-user and gain full access to any sub-user account. It can also delete / edit sub-user accounts, change username / password, or disable sub-user accounts. A sub-user account can also be assigned to a different user later.
- A guest account can be created for external clients.

For a very small company that only needs to backup a few computers, you can backup all computers to the same DriveHQ account. **No additional software license is needed for that**.

If you need to backup a lot of computers, esp. if you need to backup multiple users' computers, and that each user should not see folders / files backed up by other users, then you can assign a sub-user account to each user. Each user can backup his computer(s) to his own account.

The group administrator user can check the group backup status online. To check group backup status, the group owner / administrator user can logon DriveHQ Online Backup, go to Options tab, in the Group Account page, you can see a link "View Group Backup Status". See the screenshot below.

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

📑 DriveHQ Online Backup - Enterprise Edit	ion - Welcome x! 🤋 😑 😵
DriveHQ Online Backup Enterprise Edition	Storage usage: 99% Home Create Restore Manage Tasks Options
My DriveHQ Account	Log Out 🖏
<ul> <li>My Profile</li> <li>Account Balance</li> <li>Change Password</li> <li>My Options</li> <li>Subscription</li> <li>Encrypted Folder</li> <li>System Options</li> </ul>	Using DriveHQ Group Admin tool, you can: - Create / add / edit / delete sub-user; - Allocate storage space and download bytes; - Share different folders to different users, sub-groups and contact groups with different permissions; - Automatically sync folders among user accounts.
Group Account	View Group Backup Status           Launch Group Admin Tool         Close
© 200	3-2010 Drive Headquarters, Inc. All rights reserved.

Check group backup status

If you don't have DriveHQ Online Backup client software installed on the computer, you can also check backup status online. To do so, just logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, and then click on the link "All Services" and select "DriveHQ Online Backup" in the pull-down menu, as shown in the screenshot:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0



After you click on "DriveHQ Online Backup", it will go to the Backup Service main web page: http://www.drivehq.com/backup/

The backup service main web page has a lot of info about DriveHQ Online Backup, it is recommended to visit the page; you can find a link to "Online Backup Live Demo". It is recommended to look at the live demo to get an initial idea about DriveHQ online backup service.

From the backup main web page, click on "My Backup" tab, as shown in the following screenshot:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0



You will find the list of backup tasks created by your own account, see the screenshot below:

ve Headquarters		up Plans F	All Services   Enterp	rise Service   Partnership My Backup My	Account
ne <u>FreeDrivehq</u> ! <u>Group A</u>	dmin				
Online Backup Your Backup Tasks: Backup Name	Description	Source	Hardware Ne	eded! Backup Date	
Microsoft Outlook E-mai Backup	Microsoft Outlook E-mail Backup	JINGWANG	Backup weekly schedule	2010-07-15 06:33:19	
Backup0	Backup0	BRUCE-PC	Real-time	2010-07-15 07:36:14	
View group backup task	status				

My Backup page on DriveHQ.com

From "My Backup" page, click on "View group backup task status", it will display the group backup task status page as show below:

me <u>FreeDrivehq</u>	! <u>Group Admin</u> Band	width: used 16 KB/total	0 B Subscribe	2	
	Backup Stat k Count: 3	us			
User Name	Backup Name	Description	Source Computer	Туре	Backup Date
FreeDrivehq	Microsoft Outlook E-mail Backup	Microsoft Outlook E-mail Backup	JINGWANG	Backup weekly schedule	2010-07-15 06:33:19
FreeDrivehq	Backup0	Backup0	BRUCE-PC	Real-time	2010-07-15 07:36:14
- SubFreeDrivehq	Backup0	Backup0	BRUCE-PC	Real-time	2010-07-15 08:24:24

Group backup status page

As you can see, this page also displays backup tasks created by sub-users. In the above screenshot, user "SubFreeDrivehq" is a sub-user of "FreeDrivehq".

## 9.13 Access / Restore Files backed up by DriveHQ Online Backup using DriveHQ.com website

DriveHQ Online Backup is fully integrated with DriveHQ Online Storage, Online Sharing & Collaboration, FTP Server Hosting system. Files backed up to DriveHQ system can be accessed using DriveHQ.com website, DriveHQ FileManager or FTP.

To access files using DriveHQ.com website, you can logon DriveHQ Online Backup client software, click on Options tab, then from "My Profile" page, and click on "View Files on DriveHQ.com".

You can also directly logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, go to Online Storage section. The files backed up DriveHQ Online Backup are usually stored in this folder:

\DriveHQData\DriveHQ WWWBackup\Data\TASKNAME

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Drive Headquarters <sup>™</sup> Redefine the online storage		My Storage	Share	Publish	My Account	)
elcome <u>FreeDrivehq</u> ! <u>Group Admin</u> Bandwidti	h: US	ed 16 KB/total 0 B <u>Subscri</u>	<u>ibe</u>			
😰 🖄 🚣 🍓 🤍 Up Up Upload Download Zip Download Share Pu	🌏 Jblish	New Folder New File Copy	X Cut	X 🛅 Delete Paste	Rate Subsci	
8	^	Folder Path: \				ļ
DriveHQ Root		🛃 Select 🛛 🌔 Folders 🗸	🔎 Search	💻 Slideshow  🏢	View 🤝 🧮 Op	ptic
- <u>Ay Storage</u>		Name 🔺	Actio	on Create Time		
DriveHQData		DriveHQData	Ø-	9/3/2008 11	:41:52 PM	
ि GriveHQ WWWBackup		GroupRead	0-	7/15/2010 1	:11:56 AM	
Backup0		GroupWrite	0-	7/15/2010 1	11:56 AM	l
Test		_ ~	0-	9/3/2008 11		
🖮 🔄 Microsoft Outlook E-mail Backup		My Documents	2			
🔂 Outlook		PublicFolder	Q-	9/3/2008 11	:41:41 PM	
🖲 🔂 History data		🔲 🗀 <u>Work</u>	Q-	11/12/2009	11:02:36 PM	
Info	ر		1-	9/3/2008-11	-41-41 PM	
	*	<				>

You can navigate to the file that you want to download and download it directly online. You can also use the Zip Download feature to download multiple files / folders at once.

Using DriveHQ FileManager client software or FTP client software, you can easily drag and drop files / folders from the online storage to your local storage.

If you created any encrypted backup, the files are backed up to the following folder:

\My documents\My Encrypted Data\TASKNAME

You cannot use web browser or FTP to restore / access encrypted files. You must use DriveHQ Online Backup or DriveHQ FileManager to download encrypted files.

#### 9.14. DriveHQ Online Backup Trouble-shooting Guide

DriveHQ Online Backup 5.0 enterprise edition has proven to be very reliable. However, under different environment, users may still experience some problems.

## (1) Cannot download DriveHQ Online Backup software or the downloaded file cannot run; or the setup experience some error.

You can download DriveHQ Online Backup online from DriveHQ's software download page: http://www.drivehq.com/downloads/downloadonlinebackup.aspx

Make sure you download the right version (32-bit or 64-bit) for your operating system. You can find your OS version using Internet Explorer and access the following page:

http://www.drivehq.com/downloads/FindOSVersion.aspx

A lot of anti-virus software or network security software could interfere with the download of DriveHQ Online Backup installer file.

On Windows 2008 server, downloading files using Internet Explorer is not allowed by default. You must change the option to allow file download. You can use Firefox or Chrome to download the file.

Some anti-virus / security software automatically renames EXE files to other file type. In this case, after you finished downloading the file, you need to change the file extension back to .EXE.

If you still cannot install DriveHQ Online Backup, please make sure your Windows logon account can install software. Using a Windows System Administrator account is recommended.

You might also want to turn off (disable) all firewall software / security software / anti-virus software briefly to check if the problem is fixed.

#### (2) I have installed the software. When I try to create the first backup task, it crashes.

Again, this is most likely to be caused by anti-virus software / network security software. Please make sure you don't have any such software blocking DriveHQ Online Backup GUI process and the DHQBackupSvc.exe process. You can turn off / disable such software briefly to check if it caused DriveHQ problem.

Due to too many anti-virus / network security software types and versions, DriveHQ cannot offer more detailed help. However, you can definitely solve the problem as we have a huge number of users, and our users can almost always solve this problem by themselves.

## (3) The software failed to connect to DriveHQ.com. It keeps retrying connecting to DriveHQ.com, but never succeeds.

First of all, please open Internet Explorer (Must use Internet Explorer for this purpose; cannot be any other web browser), try to logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u>. If it doesn't work, then you have an Internet connection problem. You need to fix this problem first.

If you can logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u> using Internet Explorer, then the DriveHQ Online Backup client software should be able to connect DriveHQ.com. The problem could be caused by your anti-virus software, network security software blocking DriveHQ Online Backup.

- If you use a proxy server to connect to the Internet, then you need to change the Windows service DHQBackupSvc.exe's logon account. A proxy server setting usually only applies to the current Windows logon account. However, by default DriveHQ Online Backup service process (DHQBackupSvc.exe) runs as the LocalSystem account, which lacks the proxy server setting. In this case, you need to change the DriveHQ Online Backup service

process's logon name. To change the Windows service logon name, please refer to the **Backup network folders section** within the online help of DriveHQ Online Backup.

 Certain cache servers might also interfere with DriveHQ Online Backup's connection to DriveHQ.com system. A lot of cache servers cannot cache SSL contents. So you can configure DriveHQ Online Backup to use SSL. You can do so from DriveHQ Online Backup client software, click on Options → System Options, then check "Use SSL".

#### (4) DriveHQ Online Backup lost my backup task(s), what to do?

It is very rare that DriveHQ Online Backup loses the backup task list file. It was reported in the 3.x versions. The problem could happen when you create backup tasks on two different computers at about the same time. Also it could happen when the software is uploading a new version backup task list file and the network suddenly becomes unavailable.

If this happens, usually you can restore an older version backup task list file using DriveHQ FileManager. The backup task list file is stored in this remote folder:

\DriveHQData\DriveHQ WWWBackup\Info

The backup task list file name is: BackupTasklist.xml. A backup copy of the task list file name is saved as "Copy\_BackupTasklist.xml"; if the Backup Task list is lost, please try the following steps:

- Log out DriveHQ Online Backup. To logout, click on the Options tab and click on "Log Out" to logout DriveHQ Online Backup.
- Use DriveHQ FileManager or DriveHQ.com website, rename "BackupTasklist.xml" to "BackupTasklist\_back.xml". Then rename "Copy\_BackupTasklist.xml" to "BackupTasklist.xml".
- Logon DriveHQ Online Backup again. This usually should fix the problem.

If the above solution does not solve your problem, you might have to re-create the backup task. Please note all your files / folders backed up to DriveHQ are not affected. You can restore your files using DriveHQ FileManager, FTP or DriveHQ.com website at any time. You don't need to upload all your files / folders again. You just need to re-create the same backup task (using the same backup task name and the same source folder). After you have finished re-creating the same backup task, it will try to backup all files / folders again. At this time, DriveHQ Online Backup will detect that the same files already exist in the backup destination folders. So it will skip uploading the same files again. Thus the "initial" backup will be much faster than the real "initial" backup (which needs to upload all files / folders a long time).

(5) What to do if DriveHQ Online Backup fails to respond; takes a very long time doing something without any progress; e.g. displaying "Refreshing task list..."? If you click

on the Cancel button, the "Refreshing task list" dialog is not closed. Instead, the "Cancel" button is disabled, so you cannot close the dialog.

- It is very rare for DriveHQ Online Backup to lock up. If so, it usually can detect such lock-up automatically. So please be patient to wait for enough time (10 minutes).

If it is truly locked up, you can solve the problem using 2 ways:

- Method 1: Restart your computer. Restart your computer may also solve some other strange problems.
- Method 2:

Open Windows Task Manager and end the DriveHQBackup.exe process;

<b>Windows Task Manager</b> File Options View Help	_		
Applications Processes Servio	es Performance Net	tworking Use	rs
Image Name 🔺	User Name CPU	Memory (	Description
alg.exe	LOCAL 00	1,380 K	Application Layer Gateway Service
audiodg.exe	LOCAL 00	10,224 K	Windows Audio Device Graph Is
caller64.exe	Administ 00	1,044 K	caller64.exe
chrome.exe *32	Administ 00	8,220 K	Google Chrome
chrome.exe *32	Administ 00	29,488 K	Google Chrome
cmd.exe	Administ 00	828 K	Windows Command Processor
conhost.exe	Administ 00	2,964 K	Console Window Host
csrss.exe	SYSTEM 00	1,864 K	Client Server Runtime Process
csrss.exe	SYSTEM 00	7,112 K	Client Server Runtime Process
DellWMgr.exe *32	Administ 00	5,112 K	Dell Webcam Manager Application
DHQBackupSvc.exe	Open File Leasting	6,084 K	Base Service
DHQFMSvc.exe	Open File Location	2,584 K	Base Service
DrivehqBackup.exe	End Process	34,364 K	Online Backup
dwm.exe	End Process Tree	1,296 K	Desktop Window Manager
explorer.exe	Debug	32,676 K	Windows Explorer
<u>  •  </u>	UAC Virtualization		
Show processes from all us	Create Dump File	_	End Process
rocesses: 90 CPU Usage:	Set Priority Set Affinity	• ory: 75%	

End a process using Windows Task Manager.

You can right click on a process, and then click on "End Process". You can also select a process and click on the "End Process" button at the bottom-right corner.

- Go to Control Panel → Administrative Tools → Services. Stop the service named "DriveHQ Backup service". If it fails to stop, you can kill the process named "DHQBackupSvc.exe" process to stop the service;
- You can then restart "DriveHQ Backup service" from the Services dialog. After that, restart the DriveHQ Online Backup GUI program.

#### (6) Why it takes such a long time to backup my task?

If you backup a lot of files or a lot of data, it could take a long time for DriveHQ Online Backup to upload the files. The upload speed is dependent on many factors:

- Total amount of data;
  - Usually, the more data you upload, the longer time it takes.
- Total number of files or file sizes;
  - If you upload a lot of small files, the overhead will be very significant and thus the speed is much slower than uploading large files.
- Types of files;
  - When you upload an image file, DriveHQ server will create 1 thumbnail image and 1 preview image, thus it will be slower than uploading other file types.
  - DriveHQ Online Backup supports data compression to speed up file download / upload. If a file type is uncompressed, it can be uploaded faster than a compressed file type. Uncompressed file types incl. Text, HTML, MS Word, Excel, DLL, PDF, etc. Compressed file types incl. JPG, MP3, ZIP, RAR, PPT, and MPEG, etc.
- The upload speed from your computer to DriveHQ server:
  - Even if you have a very fast Internet connection, it won't guarantee the upload / download speed to a particular website. Note your ISP's Internet connection speed usually can only guarantee the speed from your computer to your ISP's data center. From your ISP's data center to DriveHQ.com data center, it will go through many hops on the Internet backbones. Most hops are shared by numerous Internet users. So it is very much like a high-way system. The slowest hop (link) determines the actual speed.
  - Your ISP might be able to optimize the connection speed for you by changing the routing.

Please note DriveHQ servers are extremely fast. We also have virtually unlimited network bandwidth. As mentioned above, that does not guarantee that you will get a very fast speed. However, if you need to use our service from multiple locations, (e.g.: if you have sub-users or clients in different locations), then the combined connection speed will be very fast.

#### DriveHQ technologies that speed up file upload / download:

DriveHQ has developed a lot of technologies to speed up file download / upload performance. The technologies include:

- Transparent data compression:
  - When you upload / download files using DriveHQ Online Backup, it can automatically compress data for fast uploading / downloading. If you upload / download compressible files, the speed will be many times faster.
- Local cache folder:
  - When you open / download a remote file using DriveHQ FileManager or DriveHQ Online Backup, the file is downloaded to your local cache folder. This way, it will not upload / download the same files again and again.
- Magic Upload:
  - In certain cases, when the same file has been uploaded to DriveHQ by any user, then backing up the file will be extremely fast as it can skip the upload / download.
- Automatic resuming and manual resuming:
  - When you upload a very large file, the network connection could become broken in the middle. DriveHQ Online Backup can automatically retry the network connection and resume upload (download). If upload fails for any reason, you can still manually re-start the backup and resume uploading from where it was interrupted.
- (7) DriveHQ Online Backup worked very well, but suddenly something is wrong; it seems the backup tasks become corrupted. I have tried to uninstall DriveHQ Online Backup and reinstall it, still cannot fix the problem. How can I start it over from the scratch? Or How can I completely remove DriveHQ Online Backup from the computer and then reinstall it?

Uninstall and reinstall DriveHQ Online Backup may not fix all problems. When you uninstall DriveHQ Online Backup, it only removes the application files and registry settings created during the setup process. It doesn't delete any cached data files / folders; it also does not delete application settings in Windows registry. To completely remove DriveHQ Online Backup, firstly, please uninstall DriveHQ Online Backup from your computer; you can uninstall DriveHQ Online Backup from your Windows Control Panel  $\rightarrow$  Add / Remove Programs).

(

- Quit DriveHQ Online Backup GUI program; (right click on the small icon in the system notification area, select Exit) DONE
- Stop "DriveHQ Backup service process"; you can stop "DriveHQ Online Backup service process" from Administrative Tools Services. See the screenshot below: -DONE
- )

- Delete all files / folders in your DriveHQ.com account. You can easily do so using DriveHQ FileManager 5.0 client software. You can also do so using www.drivehq.com website. If you have a lot of files, it could take some time to finish deleting all files.
- Delete the following local cached folders and all subfolders (if they exist)

```
C:\Documents and Settings\Default User\Application Data\DriveHQ deleted
```

C:\Documents and Settings\WINDOWS LOGON USERNAME\Application Data\DriveHQ

(where WINDOWS\_LOGON\_USERNAME is the username which you use to logon the computer)

You can then reinstall DriveHQ Online Backup to backup files.

(8) I have a lot of data to backup, which takes a very long time. Can I ship a USB disk to DriveHQ? In case of emergency, can DriveHQ copy all my files to a USB disk and ship it back to me?

Yes. You can ship a USB disk to DriveHQ and we will upload the files from our data center, which is many times faster than you upload it directly. If you use our enterprise service, you can send up to 2 USB disks each year. We will upload the files for free.

If you use our regular premium service, you need to pay for the cost of handling the upload. It is very affordable if you have a lot of data.

DriveHQ can also copy all your files to a USB drive and ship it back to you upon request. There will additional cost involved in preparing the data and ship the disk. Please contact DriveHQ customer support for more details.

(9) I have a lot of data to backup (e.g. over 100GB). I have copied my files to a USB disk and shipped it to DriveHQ. Now DriveHQ has finished uploading my files. How can I create a new backup task without uploading the same files again?

Yes, you can create a new backup task without uploading the same files again. The main idea is: If the same file exists in the destination folder, then DriveHQ Online Backup (and FileManager) will skip uploading (or downloading) the same files again.

To avoid uploading the same files again, you just need to make sure that the same files exist in the backup destination folder. Please follow the following steps to create the new backup task (and avoid uploading the same files again).

#### **Step 1: Understand where the backup destination folder is:**



If you create a backup task that backs up a folder "Favorites" as follows:

If you save the backup task name as "Backup3", then the backup destination folder will be:

\DriveHQData\DriveHQ WWWBackup\Data\Backup3\Favorites

You can easily check the backup destination folder using DriveHQ FileManager or DriveHQ.com website.

**Step 2: Move or Copy your files / folders already uploaded to DriveHQ account to the correct destination folder.** If the destination folder has not been created yet, you can create it manually.

Step 3: Create the backup task using the right task name and source folder so that the task's destination folder matches what you have prepared in step 2.

Step 4: Run the backup task and open the Progress Window to monitor the progress. Make sure that file uploads are automatically skipped. If you see it is actually uploading a lot of files, then please double check if some files have been changed locally. If not, it means you have not prepared the destination folders correctly. You can check the folders . files in:

\DriveHQData\DriveHQ WWWBackup\Data\BACKUPNAME

And see where it is uploading files / folders to. Please note the above method works for non-encrypted backup tasks only. For encrypted backup tasks, it needs to be done differently. Please contact DriveHQ customer support for more info.

### **10. DriveHQ FileManager**

DriveHQ FileManager is the flagship software for DriveHQ Online Storage, Sharing, Publishing, Collaboration and Automatic Folder Synchronization. It is strongly recommended to install DriveHQ FileManager.

#### 10.1. Advantages of DriveHQ FileManager

DriveHQ FileManager works like Windows Explorer (or My Computer); it supports a Windows Explorer Interface, but can display both the local files and the cloud files. It seamlessly integrates the local files and remote files, making it extremely easy to drag and drop files / folders between local folders and remote folders.

Compared with local storage, DriveHQ FileManager offers cloud-based file server service, which has the following benefits:

- You can access your files / folders from anywhere without carrying a portable storage device;
- DriveHQ has multiple levels of redundancies in protecting your files, it is usually much more reliable than your own local storage;
- You can easily share files with people in remote locations, incl. colleagues and clients;
- You can easily create and manage sub-user accounts for your employees or clients.

There are a lot more advantages, which will be described later in the features sections.

#### **10.2. DriveHQ FileManager features:**

DriveHQ FileManager has a lot of great features, incl.:

- The easy and familiar user Interface:
  - Supports Windows Explorer interface and FTP interface. You can easily drag and drop files / folders between your local storage and cloud storage;
- Folder / File Sharing:
  - You can easily select a folder / file and share it with other people, incl. non-DriveHQ members.
- Share different folders to different users with different permissions:
  - You can share different folders to different users and set different levels of access rights.
- Folder / File Publishing
  - You can easily select a folder / file and publish it, which will create a static link(s) to the folder and file (and files in the published folder). The static link(s) can be

used by any users, any websites, web pages to link to the folder / file(s). User logon is not needed.

#### - Folder Synchronization:

- You can select a folder and click on the Synchronize button to sync a local folder with a remote folder; you can synchronize multiple PCs by syncing to the same remote folder.
- By using DriveHQ shared folders, you can synchronize folders belong to different user accounts, hence sync-ing folders on multiple computers that belong to different users.
- You can set one-way or two way folder synchronization tasks; you can set synchronization schedules.

#### - Group Sharing and Collaborations:

• You can share folders / files to a group, a sub-group or a contact group. You can share different folders to different group(s) with different levels of access rights.

#### - Encrypted Folder

• You can turn on the Encrypted Folder feature, setup an encryption key, and then upload files / folders to the encrypted folder. Files uploaded to the encrypted folder are transparently encrypted by DriveHQ FileManager client software. Files remain encrypted on DriveHQ server. The encryption key is never sent to DriveHQ server. So it is extremely secure.

#### - Data Compression for faster upload / download.

- DriveHQ FileManager (and Online Backup) can automatically compress data for faster upload / download.
- Supports automatic / manual resuming, can upload / download any size files reliably
  - When you upload / download very large files, it is possible that the network connection gets dropped in the middle. This can be caused by your network device, your computer problem, your ISP, or Wi-Fi signal being too weak, or other temporary network issues. When this happens, DriveHQ FileManager (and Online Backup) can automatically retry the connection. Moreover, the current upload / download status is recorded, so you never need to upload / download from the scratch again.
- Magic Upload:
  - In certain special cases, if a file has been uploaded by any user before, DriveHQ FileManager can automatic detect it and skip the uploading. This can dramatically increase the upload speed.
- Speed Limit:
  - When you upload a lot of files, DriveHQ FileManager may use a big percentage of network bandwidth. To avoid DriveHQ FileManager from using too much download bandwidth, you can set the speed limit for DriveHQ FileManager so that you can better utilize other web applications.

#### 10.3 Get Started with DriveHQ FileManager

#### 10.3.1: Download DriveHQ FileManager installer from the URL

http://www.drivehq.com/downloads/downloadfilemanager.aspx

There are two versions of DriveHQ FileManager: the 32-bit version and 64-bit version.

In general, you should install the 32-bit version on 32-bit operating system and 64-bit version on 64-bit version operating system. In fact, the 64-bit version cannot be installed on 32-bit version operating system; the 32-bit version can be installed on 64-bit version operating system, however, some minor features may not work.

- How to find which version of DriveHQ FileManager to install?

You can use this page to find your OS type and then install the right version software. Just open <u>Internet Explorer</u>, copy and paste the following URL:

http://www.drivehq.com/downloads/FindOSVersion.aspx

#### 10.3.2. Install DriveHQ FileManager on your computer

After you have downloaded the software, please double click on the installer file to launch the setup. Follow the wizard step by step and it will install DriveHQ FileManager on your computer.

#### Usually, it should be straight-forward to install DriveHQ FileManager.

#### **Trouble shoot installer problems:**

On some computers, it might fail to install. In this case, please double check:

(1) If you are installing the right version DriveHQ Online Backup. Read Step 1 more carefully.

(2) Make sure you don't have any anti-virus / security software that blocked DriveHQ installer.

(3) Make sure you have the right to install software on your computer. Some companies / organizations may not allow employees to install software on their computers. Public computers, such as those in a library, usually do not allow any users to install any software.

(4) Some anti-virus / security software may allow you to download an EXE installer file; however, it might change the .exe file extension to a different extension. In this case, you need to change the file extension back to .exe before you double click on the installer file.

#### 10.3.3. Start DriveHQ FileManager

It is recommended to visit:

http://www.drivehq.com/downloads/downloadfilemanager.aspx and click on "View FileManager Live Demo" link to see how FileManager works.

The first time you start DriveHQ FileManager on a computer, it will display the following dialog.

🔯 DriveHQ FileManager 🛛 🤋	×
Welcome to DriveHQ FileManager, the best software for secure online storage, sharing, publishing, FTP and folder synchronization.	
Not a DriveHQ member?	
Please enter your email to start using FileManager	
Email Address:	
Submit	

Run DriveHQ FileManager for the 1<sup>st</sup> time

If you don't have an account on DriveHQ.com, then please enter your email address to create a temp account. Once you enter your email address and click Submit, it will display the following dialog. Click on the OK button, it will automatically logon as the newly created temp user account.



Note this is a temporary account only. DriveHQ system will automatically send you a welcome email, where you can find your temporary username and password. Usually the email is delivered within 10 minutes. Sometimes, it could take up to half an hour.

After you receive the email, you must follow the instruction to logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, then change your username / password to your own permanent username / password.

If you don't receive the welcome email, please make sure you check your junk / bulk / trash mail folders. Most likely your email server (or your ISP) has filtered / blocked DriveHQ email. If you still cannot receive the email, please contact your system administrator or ISP not to block DriveHQ emails, or try a different email address (using a different email server or different ISP).

If you already have a DriveHQ account, please select "Already a member" and then proceed to logon.

🔯 DriveHQ FileManager 🛛 ?	×
Welcome to DriveHQ FileManager, the best software for secure online storage, sharing, publishing, FTP and folder synchronization.	
Not a DriveHQ member? Iready a member?	
Log on	Ĩ
User name:	
Password:	
Remember account info 🔽 Log on automatically	
Logon	
DriveHO FileManager initial logon screen	

DriveHQ FileManager initial logon screen

After you logon, it will display the main screen of DriveHQ FileManager, as shown below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

File Edit View Tools Help	ileManager – 🗆 🗙
Z         A         K         K           Disconnect         Upload         Download         Share         Publish         Sy	nchronize Options Help Display
Image: Size Type       Date Modified         Image: Size Typ	My Computer
Max Space:5.32 GB, Free Space:5.31 GB	
Progress   Size  Time Left   Speed   Status Task Manage	Local Server Action
Resume Stop 🛞 Delete Ready	

DriveHQ FileManager main screen

On top of the screen, you can see the main menu and toolbar; on the left-hand side, it displays remote files / folders in your DriveHQ account; on the right-hand side, it displays your local files / folders. At the bottom of the screen, it displays the "upload / download tasks" list.

#### 10.4. Using DriveHQ FileManager for Online Storage

First, please launch DriveHQ FileManager from Windows Start menu or from the desktop icon. Logon the software; it will display the Main Screen as shown above.

The default user interface displays the remote files on the left-hand side and local files on the right-hand side; this is like a lot of FTP client software. You can click on the display button to change the layout.

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

File Edit View Tools Help DriveHQ FileManager – 🗆								
Z	A Upload	Download	Ca Share	Publish	Synchronize	Options	? Help	Display
💁 🖾 Dri 💠 💠 0	veHQ Root	( <b>1</b> 2	@ Q [	•	Go) 🖫 🧕	My Computer	< 🗈 💈	Show DriveHQ.com files only Show local and DriveHQ.com files Show local files only

Click on the display button to change the layout

After you click on the display button, you it will display a pull-down menu:

- Show DriveHQ.com files only;
- Show local and DriveHQ.com files; (the default display);
- Show local files only

If you select "Show DriveHQ.com files only", it will display the following dialog:

🙀 File Edit View Tools H	Help DriveHQ	FileManager			- 🗆 X
Z A Z Disconnect Upload Download	Share Publish	Synchronize	options	(?) 📃 👻 Help Display	
Image: Content of the second secon	⊛ Q, ြ <mark>6</mark> ⊞-				• 60
<ul> <li>DriveHQ Root</li> <li>My Storage</li> <li>GroupRead</li> <li>GroupWrite</li> <li>PublicFolder</li> <li>Work</li> <li>DriveHQ Share</li> <li>PreeDrivehq</li> <li>GroupRead</li> <li>GroupWrite</li> <li>GroupWrite</li> <li>My Documents</li> <li>DriveHQ Share</li> <li>ShareSample</li> <li>DriveHQ Control Panel</li> <li>Manage My Share</li> <li>Manage My Publish</li> </ul>	Name My Storage OriveHQ Share	11,511	Size Type L KB File Folder 5 KB File Folder File Folder	Date Modified 2008-09-04 14:41: 2008-09-04 14:41: 2008-09-04 14:41:	41
Max Space:524 MB, Free Space:5	13 MB	<b>^</b>			

Show DriveHQ.com files with the Progress pane hidden

When showing DriveHQ.com files only, it displays the remote folder tree on the left-hand side; on the right-hand side, it displays the selected folder contents.

As you can see in the left-hand side, the root folder is "DriveHQ Root", which is not a real folder. It is a virtual folder containing 3 more folders:

**"My Storage" folder:** It is also not a real folder. It is a virtual folder that contains all folders and files of this user account.

All folders / files inside of "My Storage" virtual folder are real folders / files. These folders / files are owned by this user. By default, folders and files are secure and private, unless shared to other user(s) or published for anybody to access. Users have full access to files / folders in their own "My Storage" folder, incl. create folders, upload files, edit / delete / download files / folders, share / publish folders and files, etc.

**"DriveHQ Share" folder:** This folder is a virtual folder, which contains all folders / files shard to this user by other DriveHQ members. On the above screenshot, you can find 2 folders in "DriveHQ Share" folder:

"FreeDrivehq", "webmaster". .

These are still not real folders. These are the usernames (and virtual folders) who shared folders to this user.

As you expand the username "FreeDrivehq", you can see two folders:

"GroupRead" and "GroupWrite"

These are still not real folders. They are "Shares" created by the user "FreeDrivehq".

So the folders in "DriveHQ Share" has the format of:

```
[\DriveHQ Share]\USER_NAME\SHARE_NAME\FOLDER_NAME\...
Or \\USER NAME\SHARE NAME\FOLDER NAME\...
```

Where "DriveHQ Share", "USER\_NAME" and "SHARE\_NAME" are all virtual folders. Virtual folders cannot be deleted or renamed. So when you right click on a virtual folder, most of the popup menu items are disabled.

Usually you cannot upload files to a "virtual folder", except the "My Storage" virtual folder and share names like \\USER NAME\SHARE NAME\.

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

👰 File Edit Vi	ew Tools He	lp 🔪	DriveHQ	FileManager				- = ×
Z A	Download	Share	Publish	다. 약드 Synchronize	options	(?) Help	Display	
🕞 🛅 \\FreeDriveho	\GroupWrite\Proje	ect 🕞 🔍 🖗	}					• •
DriveHQ Root My Storage DriveHQ Share GroupRed GroupWr Projet ShareSa DriveHQ Contro Manage My	ad ite SyncFolder Expand Cut Copy	ime 🔺	-		Size Type	Date	Modified	
0 object(s)	Copy Publish Show Publish Properties			<u> </u>				

Right click on a real folder in a Shared folder

As shown in the screen above, the "Project" folder is a real folder. When you right click on "Project", it pops up a menu, where you can see options to "Cut", "Copy", "Delete", "Rename" and "Download" the folder.

Please note Folders in a shared folder cannot be shared or published by this user. Only folders' (or files') owner can share the folders / files.

There is a shared folder sample from the Webmaster user: \\webmaster\ShareSample

This share is used as an example; it also includes the instructions about folder sharing.

#### 10.4.1 Detail View and Thumbnail / Icon View

DriveHQ FileManager can display folders using Thumbnail / Icon / Detail Views. By default, it displays folders in detail view. You can change it to other view by clicking in the toolbar, as shown below:

File Edit View Tools Help DriveHQ FileManager	- = ×
Z         A         X         Image: Comparison of the second se	Display
Image: SamplePhoto1.jpg       SamplePhoto2.jpg       SamplePhoto3.jpg       Image: SamplePhoto3.jpg	▼     Go       Type     Date Modified       Loc     Loc       CD     CD
4 object(s)      Progress   Size  Time Left Speed  Status   Local   Serve	er Action
Resume 💿 Stop 🛞 Delete 🛛 Estimated Time Left: min sec	

Change folder view to thumbnail, icon or detail view

#### 10.4.2 View File Properties and Edit File / Folder Caption & Description

From DriveHQ FileManager, select a remote file, and then click on the Properties button in the small toolbar, as shown below:

ſ	4		My Pi	ctures								•	Go
	4	$\Rightarrow$	Ŷ	Ö	×		Z	•	Q	<b></b>			
			-			Pr	oper	ty			- T	7	^

File / Folder properties button

It will pop up a Properties dialog, as shown below:

Sar	nplePhoto1.jpg	Properties	×
G	ieneral		
		SamplePhoto1.jpg	
	File Type:	JPEG image	
	Server Path:	\My Pictures\SamplePhoto1.jpg	_
	Size:	954 KB (976,657 bytes)	
	Create Time:	2010-06-11 22:27:59	
	Modify Time:	2010-05-21 14:51:59	
	Caption:	this is a sample caption	
	Description:	this is a sample description	
	< >	OK Cancel <u>Appl</u>	y

File / Folder Properties and Edit Caption / Descriptions dialog

You can see the file size, server path, size, create time, modify time, caption and description. You can also edit the caption and description field and click on Apply to save the change. This feature might be quite useful if you need to caption a lot of files / pictures.

#### 10.4.3 DriveHQ Control Panel

Click on DriveHQ control panel, you can see the following screen:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🙀 File Edit View Tools Help	DriveHQ	FileManager				- ¤ ×		
ZA A I	are Publish	Synchronize	options	(?) Help	🛄 👻 Display			
Control Panel	0 0 .					• Go		
Image of the second state and the second								
Aax Space:524 MB, Free Space:511 MB		•						
Progress Size Time	Left Speed  Status	E Loca	al	Serve	er   A	ction		
🕞 Resume 🔳 Stop 🛛 🙁 Delete	Estimated Time Left	: min sec						

DriveHQ FileManager Control Panel screen

DriveHQ Control Panel is not a real folder. It is a virtual folder linking to all tools for setting up your account options and managing the share and publish lists. The same functions can also be accessed from the Tools menu. For more detailed info, please visit the "Share Files/Folders", "Publish Files/Folders", "Synchronize Folder", and "Account Setting and Options" chapters from the Online Help of DriveHQ FileManager.

#### 10.4.4 Upload / download / manage files / folders

It is very easy to upload / download / manage files using DriveHQ FileManager. You can easily drag and drop files / folders from Windows Explorer to any folders in "My Storage" folder.

You can also drag and drop files / folders to a real folder in "DriveHQ Share", if the folder is shared to you with "Upload / Add" or "Full Access" right. For more info, please visit the "Online Sharing" section.

You can also more easily drag and drop files / folders using DriveHQ FileManager only. To do so, use the default FileManager main screen. (Click on the "Display" button and select "Show local and DriveHQ.com files").

🙀 File Edit View Tools Help DriveHQ	FileManager		- = ×
Disconnect Upload Download Share Publish	Synchronize Optio	2 2	Display
Image: Work     Image: Constraint of the second secon	Name C:Work	<ul> <li>Size Type</li> <li>Size Type</li> <li>7 KB Micro</li> <li>17 KB Micro</li> </ul>	▼       Go         □ate Modified       ▲         2010-07-15 14;4       ▲         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓         2009-12-02 13;1       ↓
6 object(s) selected, File Size: 100 KB			
Progress   Size  Time Left Speed  Statu	s   Local	Server	Action
Resume Stop 🛞 Delete Estimated Time Lef	t: min sec		

Drag and drop files / folders using DriveHQ FileManager

Other than drag and drop, there are 3 more ways to upload / download / copy / move files / folders:

- You can use the standard Windows short-cut key combinations, such as: "Ctrl + C" for copy; "Ctrl + V" for paste; "Ctrl + X" for Cut.
- You can select a folder(s) / file(s), then click on the Edit menu, and select "Cut", "Copy" and "Paste".
- You can right click on the selected File(s) / Folder(s) and select from the popup menu "Cut", "Copy", "Paste", "Delete" and "Rename", etc.

File Edit View Tools Help DriveHQ FileManager										
2			6		<b>O</b>	Ş				
Disconnect	Upload Download	Share	Publish	Synchronize	Options	He	alp.	Display		
🕒 🖻 Wo	rk		• Go	📳 🛅 C:W	ork				T GO	
💠 🗘 🖸	) 🗳 🗙 🖹 🈂 (	թ 🔍 🗉	•	💠 🗼 🖄	° 🍊 🗙		2 Q	. 🗉 🗸		
Name 🔺	Size Type	Date Modifie	ed 📃	Name 🔺		Size	Туре	Date Modif	ied 🔼	
Excel1.xls	17 KB Micros	2010-07-15	14:	Excel1.xls		17 KB	Micro	2010-07-15	5 14:4	
Excel10.xls	17 KB Micros	2009-12-02		Excel10.xls		17 KB	Micro	2009-12-02		
Excel11.x'-	00000	2009-12-02		Excel11.xls			Micro	2009-12-02		
Excel12.×	Open	2009-12-02		Excel12.xls			Micro	2009-12-02		
Excel13.×	Cut	2009-12-02		Excel13.xls			Micro	2009-12-02		
Excel14.×	Сору	2009-12-02	13:	Excel14.xls			Micro	2009-12-02		
-				Excel15.xls			Micro	2009-12-02		
	Rename			Excel16.xls Excel17.xls			Micro	2009-12-02		
	Delete			Excel17.xis			Micro	2009-12-02		
-	Download			Excel19.xls			Micro	2009-12-02		
	DUWINDAU			Excel2.xls			Micro	2010-07-15		
	Copy Publish URL			Reveal20 via			Micro	2010 07 15	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
🙉 6 obje	Show Publish URL									
	Properties			•						
Progres	· · · ·	irne Left Spe	ed  Status	Loca			Server	A	ction	
	, j.	J	1	1						
	0		1							
🕞 Resume	Stop 🛞 Delete	( Estimat	ed Time Left:	min sec						

Access DriveHQ actions menu by right clicking on the select files & folders.

After you drag and drop or copy / paste multiple files / folders, it will start uploading / downloading immediately. The files are added to the upload / download task list at the bottom of the screen. See the screenshot below:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🧃 File E	dit View	v Tools He	elp 🔪	DriveHQ	FileManager				- 🗆 🤅
7	含	*	2	2		6	?	-	
Disconnect	Upload	Download	Share	Publish	Synchronize	Options	Help	Display	
💁 🖻 Wor	'k			<b>v</b> Go	📳 🛅 C:W	/ork			• Go
💠 🔶 🖄	X 🍅 1	🗈 🈂 (	🕒 🔍 🖪	•	💠 🗘 🖄	X 🍋 1	🖻 🈂	Q 🔳 🗸	
Name 🔺		Size Type	Date Modif	fied	Name 🔺		Size Type	Date Mod	lified 🔼
Excel1.xls	1	7 KB Micros	2010-07-15	5 14:	Excel1.xls		17 KB Micro	2010-07-1	15 14:4
Excel10.xls	-	.7 KB Micros	2009-12-02		Excel10.xls		17 KB Micro		
Excel11.xls	1	7 KB Micros	2009-12-02		Excel11.xls		17 KB Micro	2009-12-0	02 13:1
Excel12.xls	1	7 KB Micros	2009-12-02	2 13:	Excel12.xls		17 KB Micro	2009-12-0	02 13:1 🗏
Excel13.xls	1	7 KB Micros	2009-12-02	2 13:	Excel13.xls		17 KB Micro	2009-12-0	02 13:1
🖲 Excel14.xls	1	7 KB Micros	2009-12-02	2 13:	Excel14.xls		17 KB Micro	2009-12-0	02 13:1
🕙 Excel15.xls	1	7 KB Micros	2009-12-02	2 13:	Excel15.xls		17 KB Micro	2009-12-0	02 13:1
					Excel16.xls		17 KB Micro	2009-12-0	02 13:1
					Excel17.xls		17 KB Micro	2009-12-0	02 13:1
					Excel18.xls		17 KB Micro	2009-12-0	02 13:1
					Excel19.xls		17 KB Micro		
					Excel2.xls		17 KB Micro		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
~					Streep of the		17 VD Micro	2010 07 1	
7 object(s	5)								
					×				
Progress	;	Size  1	Fime Left Sp	eed  Status	s   Loca		Serv	er ji	Action 📘 🔨
0%	17 KB		10:00:00 6 KB		C:\Work\Excel1		/Work\Excel1.x		oload 🔲
0%	17 KB		10:00:03 6 KE	•	C:\Work\Excel1		Work\Excel10.		load
0%	17 KB		10:00:03 6 KE	•	C:\Work\Excel1		/Work\Excel11.		bload
0%	17 KB		10:00:03 6 KE	•	C:\Work\Excel1:		/Work\Excel12.		load
0%	17 KB	-			C:\Work\Excel1:		Work\Excel13.		
🕞 Resume	🔳 Stop	💌 Delete	e (Estima	ated Time Left	: 0 min 38 sec, Uplo	ad Speed: 6	KB/s, Files beir	ng transferred:	20, Size:

FileManager uploading multiple files / folders

As you can see from the above screenshot, when dragging multiple files / folders from the local storage to the remote storage, files are added to the transfer task list. You can see the progress of each file as well as the overall progress of all files. You can also find the local (source) file paths and remote (destination) file paths, the transfer speed and remaining time. Please note the uploading / downloading speed changes from time to time; it is dependent on many factors, such as file size, file type, whether the file has been uploaded by any other users, etc. It is also dependent on the network routing, so the actual speed varies from time to time to time and location to location. The estimated time could have a very big error.

DriveHQ does not limit upload speed. DriveHQ has virtually unlimited network bandwidth. However, the actual upload speed is limited by the particular routing. Even if you have a very fast Internet connection, such speed is usually the speed from your computer to your ISP's data center. However, the connection from your ISP to DriveHQ data center will need to go through many Internet hops; at each hop it is shared by many Internet users. The slowest link will determine the actual speed. If you connect from a different country, usually the connection speed is slower. DriveHQ FileManager has used multiple technologies to improve the upload / download speed. This is designed to make upload / download faster.

If during uploading / downloading, the network connection is dropped briefly, it can automatically retry and resume (or manual resume) when the connection is re-established. You can also manually click on the Stop button to stop (pause) uploading / downloading. You can resume the transfer later, or delete the un-finished transfer tasks by clicking on the "Delete" button.

You can also drag and drop files / folders between 2 remote folders or 2 local folders. (Please make sure you use real folders and not virtual folders.)

#### **10.5. Sharing Files and Folders**

Using DriveHQ FileManager, it is extremely easy to share folders / files online. Just logon DriveHQ FileManager, select a folder and click on the Share button.

#### **10.5.1 Share a remote folder**

As shown below, you can select a remote folder and click on Share button to share a folder.

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🔯 File Edit View Tools Help DriveHQ F	ileManager		- = ×
Z A Z R Publish	Synchronize Options	🕐 🛄 👻 Help Display	
Image       Share the sele         Image       Size       Image	cted file/folder online         Image: Second problem         Name         Local Disk (C:)         Local Disk (D:)         DVD Drive (E:)	Image: Size Type     Date Modified       Local       Local       CD Dr	ified
Comparison of the second	Local	Server A	Action

Share a folder by selecting a remote folder and click on the Share button

After you click on Share, it will pop up a new dialog:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🔯 DriveHQ FileManager - Share a folder 🛛 📪 🗙	
Easy, secure and robust file sharing on the Internet Share thousands of files and gigabytes of data easily Share remotely with anybody on the Internet Access shared files by one click in the share notification email Advanced sharing that supports user-based multi-level permissions	
Share Path: \My Documents	
Share Name:	My Documents
Share Description:	My Documents
Permission:	Full Access
Share to: (Please enter email or DriveHQ usernames, separated by "," or ";")	
SubFreeDrivehq	
Share to group       Select Group Members       Select Contacts         If any file changes, send share change notification email	
OK Cancel	

Share a folder and set permission screen

By default, the Share Name is the same as the folder name, you can change the Share Name and Share Description, select a permission level from the following levels:

- View file list / icon only
- Read / download file only
- Add / upload files
- Full access

In the Share-to field, please enter the email addresses or DriveHQ username of the persons who you want to share the folder to. If the person does not have a DriveHQ account, or if you don't know the person's DriveHQ username, you can just use the person's email address. You can enter multiple usernames / email addresses separated by "," or ";".

If you have a group account, then you can check the checkbox "Share to group", which shares the folder to all members in the group. You can also click on "Select Group Members" button to add some group members into the Share-to list.

"Select Contacts" button: click on this button will let you select users from your contact lists. You can create a contact list from DriveHQ Webmail section.
The "If any file changes, send share change notification email" checkbox is only available for paid users.

After you click on Ok, the Share is created and a confirmation dialog pops up:



Share created confirmation dialog

The remote folder "\My Documents" has been shared to the users: SubFreeDrivehq. If all Shareto users are DriveHQ members, then it is not necessary to send the share notification email. The "share-to" users can logon www.drivehq.com or DriveHQ FileManager, go to the virtual folder:

\DriveHQ Share\YOUR\_USERNAME\SHARE\_NAME

In the case of this demo, it is:

\DriveHQ Share\FreeDrivehq\My Documents

If you also share the folder to a non-DriveHQ member using his / her email address, then you need to click on "Send Share Notification" button, which will open your email client software, e.g. Outlook. See the screenshot below:

## **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

	🤊 😈 🔺 👳 🔻 User FreeDrivehq (FreeDrivehq@DriveHQ.com) has shared files (My D 📃 🗕	ΞX		
Mes	ssage Insert Options Format Text	0		
Paste 🖋 Clipboard 🕫	Times New Rom • 12 • A A       A </td <td></td>			
_	To subfreedrivehg@drivehg.com	_		
Send	Cc	_		
Account -	Subject: User FreeDrivehg (FreeDrivehg@DriveHQ.com) has shared files (My Documents	) to		
I have shared some files with you on www.DriveHQ.com. ↔ There are three ways to access these files: ↔				
<ol> <li>If you are a DriveHQ member, please log on to your account and access these files in the DriveHQShare folder. +</li> <li>If you are not a DriveHQ member yet, I recommend you to sign up now using this e-mail address. +</li> <li>My files will automatically appear in your "DriveHQ Share" Folder. +</li> <li>You can also access these files through the following link; you will have read-only access. +</li> <li>http://www.drivehq.com/sharing/ShareLogon.aspx?key=7338973/tt0255iw8pwp +</li> </ol>				

Launch Outlook (or other default email client) to send "Share notification" email

Note, you must send the Share notification email using your own email account and your own email client software. DriveHQ emails are more likely to be filled / blocked, so sending from your own email server tends to be more reliable.

In the share notification email template, you can find the "Share URL".

## **10.5.2 Share a local folder**

From DriveHQ FileManager main screen, you can also select a local folder and then click on the "Share" button. It will pop up the following dialog:

🔯 DriveHQ FileManager - Share a folder on the Internet	? X
Select a destination folder or create a new folder on server	
DriveHQ Root My Storage GroupRead GroupWrite My Documents My Music My Pictures PublicFolder Work mew folder	
📸 New Folder 🗙 Delete 🛛 🔁 Refresh	
Next Car	icel

Select a remote folder

Basically, you need to upload the files to DriveHQ storage first. Then it will share the uploaded folder online. This sharing method is far better than other local-network based folder sharing methods:

- You can share folders / files to remote users, incl. co-workers, friends, customers or guests.
- Your computer can be turned off, which will not affect the shared folder.

## **10.5.3 Accessing a shared folder:**

After you have shared a folder using DriveHQ FileManager, the folder can be accessed by the "Share-to" users online. Whether you share a folder using DriveHQ FileManager or DriveHQ.com website, the result is completely the same. You can share a folder using DriveHQ FileManager or DriveHQ.com website; you can also access a shared folder using DriveHQ FileManager or DriveHQ.com website. There is no difference, except using DriveHQ FileManager is more efficient in uploading / downloading files / folders. Using DriveHQ.com

website is more convenient if you (or a non-DriveHQ member) don't have DriveHQ FileManager installed.

Accessing a shared folder online using DriveHQ.com website is covered in "Online File / Folder Sharing" section. In this section, it only covers accessing shared folders using DriveHQ FileManager.

If another DriveHQ user shares a folder to you, he usually sends a "Share notification email", which has the detailed instructions about how to access the shared folder, e.g. a typical share notification email includes the following info

There are three ways to access these files:

\_\_\_\_\_

- 1. If you are a DriveHQ member, please log on to your account and access these files in the DriveHQShare folder.
- 2. If you are not a DriveHQ member yet, I recommend you to sign up now using this e-mail address. My files will automatically appear in your "DriveHQ Share" Folder.
- 3. You can also access these files by clicking on the Share link in the notification email; you will have read-only access. In the "Share Verify" page, enter your email to access the Share.

Please install DriveHQ FileManager to download all files. It works like Windows Explorer or FTP, supports drag-n-drop.

It can download / upload any size files reliably. Please download it at: <a href="http://www.drivehq.com/downloads/downloads.aspx">http://www.drivehq.com/downloads/downloads.aspx</a>

------

Using DriveHQ FileManager to access a shared folder, you must have a DriveHQ account. If you are not a DriveHQ member, you can sign up a DriveHQ account using the email address that received the share notification email.

If your DriveHQ username or your registered email address is in the "Share-to" list when the other user shared the folder, then you can logon DriveHQ FileManager. The folder(s) shared to you is automatically linked to the special virtual folder:

\DriveHQ Share\FOLDEROWNER USERNAME\SHARE NAME

Dependent on the permission of the share, (which is set by the user who shared the folder to you), you might be able to access the folder with "Read-only", "Add / Upload" or "Full Access" right, etc.

As an example, user FreeDrivehq shared a folder My Documents to user SubFreeDrivehq with full-access right. FreeDrivehq also shared GroupRead to the whole group with Read-only access; GroupWrite with full-access right. The screenshot below shows when the user SubFreeDrivehq logs on his own account, he can see the shared folders in the virtual folder:

```
\DriveHQ Share\FreeDrivehq\
```

Since the folder My Documents was shared with full-access right, he can right click on a blank area to create files / folders in it. He can also drag and drop files / folders into this shared folder.

Z 🖄 🖄 🗓 Disconnect Upload Download Sh	م are	Publish	다. 박희 Synchronize	options	? Help	🛄 👻 Display	
🕙 🗟 \\FreeDrivehq\My Documents 4	Q 🗞						<b>•</b> Go
My Music My Pictures DublicFolder	Driv	: ▲ veHQ SyncFold mpleText.txt	er		e Folder 20	te Modified 09-11-13 15:01 08-09-04 14:41	
DriveHQ Share     DriveHQ Share     GroupRead     GroupWrite		View Arrange Paste	ہ Icons By	-1			
E		New Refresh New Syn	, chronization	🕙 Micro	r Document soft Word Do soft Excel W		
Anage My Share		Propertie	blish URL IS		soft PowerPo mage	oint Presenta	
Progress Size Time	Left Spe	ed  Status	Local	_	Servi	er   /	Action

Accessing a shared folder (with full access right)

In the above screen, if the folder is shared with read-only access, then the menu item "New" will be disabled and you cannot upload files into the shared folder.

## **10.6 Publish Files / Folders**

By default, files in your DriveHQ account are secure and private. You cannot link files from other websites / web pages. Even if you share a folder, that will still not create static links to your files / folders.

To create links to your files / folders, you must use the Publish feature, which is described in "DriveHQ.com web-based services and features".

Whether you publish a folder using DriveHQ.com website or using DriveHQ FileManager, the result is exactly the same. DriveHQ FileManager is more efficient in uploading files and publishing folders; DriveHQ.com is more convenient, esp. if you don't have FileManager installed.

Publishing a folder using DriveHQ FileManager is extremely easy. You just select a folder and click on Publish button.

File Edit View Tools Help DriveHQ FileManager	- ¤ ×						
Disconnect Upload Download Share Publish Synchronize	Options Help Display						
Image       Image <t< td=""><td>ed file/folder online omputer</td></t<>	ed file/folder online omputer						
CriveHQData       11,00       File F       2008-09-04 14:4         GroupRead       0 B       File F       2010-07-15 16:1         GroupWrite       0 B       File F       2010-07-15 16:1         My Documents       138 B       File F       2008-09-04 14:4         My Music       2 KB       File F       2010-07-16 12:0         My Pictures       2,696       File F       2010-07-16 12:0         PublicFolder       485 KB       File F       2008-09-04 14:4         Work       332 KB       File F       2009-011-13 15:0         wwwwhome       24 KB       File F       2008-09-04 14:4	Local						
Type: File Folder, Size: 332 KB							
Progress Size Time Left Speed Status Local Server Action							

Select a server folder and then click on the Publish button

It will pop up a "Publish a server folder" dialog, as shown below.

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🔯 DriveHQ FileMar	nager - Publish a server folder ? X				
Publish and create static URLs to the folder and files in it. You can then find the Publish URLs by right clicking on the folder/files and select "Show Publish URL". No logon is required to access the published folder/files.					
Publish Path:\Work					
Publish Name:	Work				
Publish Description:	Work				
Permission:	Read/Download File only				
Membership Agreement This Membership Agreement sets forth the terms and conditions on which DriveHQ INC., offers products and services to registered users (each a "Member") of the website www.DriveHQ.com.					
	OK Cancel				

Publish a server folder dialog

From the above dialog, enter your Publish name, description and permission, check the "Yes, I agree" checkbox, then click on Ok, the folder is published and you can see the confirmation dialog with Publish URL info:

## **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

👰 DriveHQ FileManager	×
Folder "Work" has been published successfully!	
The folder Publish URL is:	
http://www.drivehq.com/file/df.aspx/publish/FreeDrivehq/Work	
The Publish URLs for files / folders in this folder are like below:	
http://www.drivehq.com/file/df.aspx/publish/FreeDrivehq/Work/FOLDERNA ME[/FILENAME]	
After a folder is published, you can right click on folders / files in it and select Show / Copy Publish URLs to get the Publish URLs. Publish URLs can be used to link to the files / folders from any website. No DriveHQ account or logon is required to access Published folders / files.	
Copy URL Cancel	

Publish confirmation dialog with Publish URL

You can click on Copy URL to copy the folder's publish URL to the clipboard, which you can paste into other application, e.g. Notepad, Word, or any HTML editor. Click Cancel to close the dialog.

You can more efficiently get multiple file / folder publish URLs. Just visit any published folder, select files / folders in it, then right click on the files / folders, select Show Publish URLs. It will open a new dialog as follows:

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

File Edit View Tools Help DriveHQ FileManager	- = ×				
Z A L L C L C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C					
	• • 2 • •				
Excel1.x       Open       Copy       Copy	Modif				
4 object(s) selected, Size, or Ker					
Progress Size Time Left Speed Status Local Server Action					

Get files / folders' publish URLs (static links)

To get the publish URLs, please right click on the selected folders / files, then click on Show Publish URL. It pops up a dialog as shown below:

🔋 DriveHQ Fil	eManager - Show Publish URL(s)	×
You can link pul use: <a href="F&lt;br&gt;To link an imag&lt;br&gt;Please note a re&lt;/td&gt;&lt;td&gt;can be accessed with static URLs from anywhere without log on.&lt;br&gt;blished files from any web pages. To link an HTML file, please&lt;br&gt;PUBLISH_URL">ANY_TEXT</a> . e, please use: <img src="PUBLISH_URL"/> . egular URL may not work if the file or folder name contains rs. In this case, please use Safe URL.		
File Name	Publish URL	
Excel1.xls Excel10.xls Excel11.xls Excel12.xls	http://www.drivehq.com/file/df.aspx/publish/FreeDrivehq/W http://www.drivehq.com/file/df.aspx/publish/FreeDrivehq/W http://www.drivehq.com/file/df.aspx/publish/FreeDrivehq/W http://www.drivehq.com/file/df.aspx/publish/FreeDrivehq/W	
URL Format:	none	_
Copy Publ	ish URL(s) Show Safe URL(s) Cancel	

Show Publish URLs dialog

You can copy the publish URLs into your Windows clipboard and paste them into other applications, such as Notepad, Word or any HTML editors.

The above publish URLs has a pattern of:

http://www.drivehq.com/file/df.aspx/publish/OWNER USERNAME/PUBLISH NAME/FILENAME

If you want to hide your username and folder name, you can click on the "Show safe URL(s)" button, which will change the Publish URLs into a new format as shown below:

🔯 DriveHQ FileManager - Show Publish URL(s)	×
Published files can be accessed with static URLs from anywhere without log on You can link published files from any web pages. To link an HTML file, please use: <a href="PUBLISH_URL">ANY_TEXT</a> . To link an image, please use: <img src="PUBLISH_URL"/> . Please note a regular URL may not work if the file or folder name contains	
invalid characters. In this case, please use Safe URL.	
Publish URL	
http://www.drivehq.com/file/df.aspx/shareID7339134/fileID547194159/547194159.xls http://www.drivehq.com/file/df.aspx/shareID7339134/fileID547194161/547194162.xls http://www.drivehq.com/file/df.aspx/shareID7339134/fileID547194163/547194163.xls	
	>
URL Format: none	
Copy Publish URL(s) Show Normal URL(s) Cancel	

Show Safe Publish URL

The safe Publish URLs hide the username, publish name, folder name and filename info. So the URL is more secure; moreover, Safe URLs are guaranteed not to have any special characters that might affect the validity of a URL. On the other hand, a regular Publish URLs may not work if it has special characters in the folder name / file name, etc.

Please note when other users visit your published (or shared) folder(s), they will be using your account download bytes. So if you expect a lot of users will access your published folder, please make sure your account has enough download bytes.

## 10.7 Access Folders Published by Other Users

You can use Publish URLs to access published folders and files. Just open a web browser and enter the Publish URL(s).

If you need to download published files, using web browser, you can only download files one by one. A much more efficient method is using DriveHQ FileManager. To download multiple

published files / folders using DriveHQ FileManager, you just need to logon DriveHQ FileManager (DriveHQ account is required), then enter the following address:

📬 File Edit View	Tools Help	DriveHQ FileMana	<u>jer</u>		- = ×
Z A	Download Share	Publish Synchron	iize Options	(?) Help D	📃 👻 isplay
Contraction (Contraction)		•	i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	My Computer	
Name 🔺	Size Type	Date Modified	Name	Size T	ype  Date Modif
Excel1.xls Excel10.xls	17 KB Microsoft 17 KB Microsoft		Second Second		o
Excel11.xls	17 KB Microsoft 17 KB Microsoft				0
Excel12.xls	17 KB Microsoft		=		
Excel13.xls	17 KB Microsoft	. 2009-12-02 13:10:35			
Excel14.xls	17 KB Microsoft				
Excel15.xls	17 KB Microsoft				
Excel16.xls	17 KB Microsoft				
Excel17.xls	17 KB Microsoft				
Excel18.xls Excel19.xls	17 KB Microsoft				
Excel2.xls	17 KB Microsoft 17 KB Microsoft				
	17 KD Microsoft	2010-07-15 14:43:40 2010 07 15 14:43:50	~		
20 object(s)					
Progress	Size  Time Left  Sp	eed Status	Local	Server	Action
🕞 Resume 间 Stop	Delete Read	¥			

## \\USERNAME\PUBLISHNAME

Enter a publish path in the server address bar to access a published folder

After you enter the Publish Address in the server address bar, click on "Go" to open the folder. The published folder works just like a regular folder, except you cannot delete it (and the files in it). You can drag and drop to download the files / folders to your local storage or to your own DriveHQ storage.

## **10.8 Folder Synchronization**

DriveHQ FileManager can synchronize a local folder with a remote folder. Synchronization can be done in real-time or at scheduled times.

DriveHQ FileManager can synchronize multiple computers to the same online folder, thus it can be used to synchronize 2 computers indirectly.

By using Group Shared folder(s), or folders shared to multiple users, DriveHQ FileManager can synchronize folders in multiple user accounts!

## **10.8.1** Create a Synchronization task

From DriveHQ FileManager, select a local or remote folder and then click on Synchronize. It will pop up the following dialog:



Click on OK to continue, it will let you select the other synchronized folder:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

👰 Setup Folder Synchronization	×
Please select or create a destination folder to synchronize with this folder.	
Desktop     My Documents     My Computer     Documents and Settings     Documents and Settings	
🎬 New Folder 🗙 Delete 😂 Refresh	
Cancel Back Nex	dt 🗌

If you want to synchronize it with a new folder, you can click on "New Folder" button, which creates a new folder to be sync-ed with the selected folder. Once you have selected the Sync target folder, click on Next, it will pop up the following dialog:

## **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🔯 Setup Folder Synchronization	×			
Synchronization Direction: Both Directions   How does it work?				
Overwrite Direction: Show Message Box 💌				
Synchronization frequency:				
💿 RealTime 🛛 😣 Scheduled				
🔿 One time only 🕥 Periodically: 🛛 🛛 hr 💷 min				
Oaily Oweekly Select day of week: Sunday				
Starting time: 14 : 46				
Don't ask for deleting files in a synchronized folder				
🔽 Save a backup copy of automatically deleted files				
Exclude these file types: (For example: *.bak *.obj)				
This task is valid from 2010- 7-16 💌 to 2099- 1- 1 💌				
Cancel Back OK				

Setup folder synchronization dialog

There are a lot of options / features in this page. Please read the detailed explanations below:

**Synchronization Direction:** There are three directions for you to choose: Both Directions, Server to local only and Local to server only. Please read more details below.

**Overwrite Direction:** There are four options for you to choose: Show Message Box, Overwrite Local, Overwrite Remote and Overwrite Older.

Synchronization Frequency: There are two general modes for you to choose: Real-time and Scheduled.

In scheduled mode, there are four options for you to choose:

- One time only: you can set the starting time for the synchronization that will be finished for one time.
- Periodically: you can set the interval for periodically synchronization task;
- Daily: you can set the starting time for daily synchronization task;

- Weekly: you can select one day of week.

## **Time Delay in Real-time Folder Synchronization**

Once you have created a real-time synchronization task, it will automatically sync local files to the remote folder in real-time as any change occurs. Synchronizing files from the remote folder to the local folder may take a little longer time. When a file is changed (or added) in the remote folder, DriveHQ FileManager cannot immediately detect such changes. It checks file changes in the remote folder periodically. Usually between 5 minutes to half an hour. When it detects such changes, it will sync the changes to the local folder.

## **About One-Way Synchronization**

It could be quite confusing about one-way synchronization. Different implementations handle it differently. Please make sure you understand it very well, otherwise it could cause files being deleted accidentally.

## The most important thing to know is: whether one-way or two-way synchronization, when the two folders are (manually) synchronized, the folder contents must be exactly the same.

For example a server folder S is configured to sync to a local folder C in a one-way synchronization, assume S and C are already sync-ed, and now think about these cases:

(1) If you add a file to S, the file will be sync-ed to C, which is as expected; if you add a file in C, the new file is deleted from folder C when next synchronization happens.

(2) If you change a file in S, it will be sync-ed to C; but if you change a file in C, it will be overwritten;

(3) If you delete a file in S, it will be deleted in C; but if you delete a file in C, it will be added back.

In short, if you have a one-way synchronization from A to B, then no matter what happens, after it finishes synchronizing, B will become the same as A.

**Exclude these file types**: Define the files or file types to be excluded from the synchronization task. Multiple file extensions, file names or file wildcards can be entered (separated by a comma or semicolon).

Note: After the Synchronization Task has been set, if you delete or modify a file in one folder, the change will be automatically applied to the other synchronized folder. You can uncheck **"Don't ask for deleting files in a synchronized folder"** to avoid unexpected file deletion. Moreover, you can check **"Save a backup copy of automatically deleted files"** so that you recover your data in case of automatic file deletion.

After you have finished all above, click on "**OK**", it will show the task progress dialog to begin transferring files and folders to the target folder.

## **10.8.2 Edit a Synchronization Task**

Click on "**Tools**"-->"**Manage Synchronization**", the "**Manage Folder Synchronization**" screen shows up, you can Disable/Enable, manual synchronize, edit or delete the Synchronize task, as shown below:

erver Fold	er Local Folder	Status	Last Synchronized Tim	e Synchronization D	irectio	in
Test	C:\Test	Ready	2010-07-16 14:25:36	Both Directions		
:			1111			
						_

Folder

Synchronization among multiple PCs and Multiple DriveHQ users

You can install DriveHQ FileManager on multiple PCs; on each PC, you can synchronize a local folder with the same remote folder. This will synchronize the folders on all PCs.

To synchronize folders among multiple DriveHQ users, e.g., if UserA wants to synchronize two folders: FolderA of UserA and FolderB of UserB, then UserB must share FolderB to UserA (usually with Full-Access right). When UserA logs on DriveHQ FileManager, he can see FolderB in "\DriveHQ Share\UserB\FolderB". He can synchronize the shared folder with his local folder.

## **10.9 DriveHQ FileManager Options**

DriveHQ FileManager has a lot of features; you can configure it to work better for you. From DriveHQ FileManager main screen, click on the Options button, it will open the Options dialog:



DriveHQ Options screen – My Options tab

As you can see from the Options dialog, it has the following features / options:

- My Profile: Click on it and it will display your account info; you can change it;

- Account Balance: You can find your account balance, incl. cash balance, service coupon balance, max storage, used storage space, download bytes and used download bytes, etc. Please make sure to check if your account balance is correct. If it does not match what you ordered, you might have allocated storage space / download bytes to your sub-user(s).
- **Change Password:** You can easily change your password online; you need to verify your current password before you can change your current password.
- My Options: As shown above, you can set the following options in this dialog:
  - **Remember my logo info:** If you checked this checkbox, you don't need to enter username / password each time.
  - Automatically sign in: When you start FileManager, it can automatically sign in FileManager.
  - **Directly edit and save remote files:** You can edit and save files on the server side directly.
  - Allow synchronizing locked files: Locked files are the same as open files, or files that are being written to. DriveHQ FileManager supports "Volume Shadow Copy", so it can synchronize files even if it is being written to. You just need to check this checkbox.
  - **Maximum cache file size:** DriveHQ FileManager caches the most recently accessed files in a local cache folder. The first time you access (open/view/read/modify) a file, it is downloaded to a local cache folder. Thus, the subsequent accessing to the same file(s) will be many times faster. By default, the software sets the maximum cache file size to 1GB.
  - Location of the local cache folder: the folder location where you saves the cached files. By default, the location is like:

C:\Users\Administrator\AppData\Roaming\DriveHQ\cacheDir\CUSTOMER\_ID

You can change the local cache folder location if needed.

- View Cache Files: click on this button to see the cached file(s).
- Clear All Cache Files: click on this button will delete all files in the cache folder.
- Subscription: you can upgrade to our paid service or order more storage space.
- **Encrypted Folder:** click on encrypted folder, you will see this screen. Please make sure to read the information carefully.

## **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🔯 DriveHQ FileManage	r - Encrypted Folder X
<ul> <li>My Profile</li> <li>Account Balance</li> <li>Change Password</li> <li>My Options</li> <li>Subscription</li> <li>Encrypted Folder</li> <li>System Options</li> <li>Speed Limits</li> <li>Folder Options</li> <li>Group Account</li> </ul>	The DriveHQ Encrypted Folder offers an unmatched level of security and privacy. Encryption offers both secure transmission and storage of your files. Files are encrypted with your private key by DriveHQ FileManager only if they are uploaded to "My Encrypted Data" folder. When you download files from this folder, the encrypted files are downloaded and decrypted by FileManager transparently. You cannot download or manage encrypted files with IE or FTP. Please enter your encryption key to create the "\My Documents\My Encrypted Data" folder: New Encryption Key: Confirm Encryption Key:
	Save Change Close

**Encrypted Folder Option** 

As you read the information on this screen, you can see that encrypted folder is extremely secure. It is more secure than regular SSL. When using SSL, it encrypts data for upload / download. The files uploaded to DriveHQ are no longer encrypted, which is usually secure as DriveHQ takes all efforts to make sure our system is secure and reliable. If you need extra level of security and privacy, you can use the encrypted folder feature. You can enter an encryption key in the above screen. Please make sure you enter a long key so that other people cannot guess the key. After you save the key, it will create a folder in you're my Documents folder:

\My Documents\My Encrypted Data\

When you upload files to this folder using DriveHQ client software, e.g DriveHQ FileManager or DriveHQ Online Backup, your files will be encrypted locally by DriveHQ client software using your encryption key. The encrypted files are uploaded to DriveHQ server. The files will remain encrypted on server. DriveHQ uses industry strength encryption algorithm with proprietary customization; without the encryption key, it is extremely hard to decrypt the files.

When you download the encrypted files on the same computer, DriveHQ client software will automatically decrypt the files. So encryption and decryption are very easy; no user action is required.

## **Please note:**

After you have uploaded some encrypted files, if you change the encryption key in FileManager, it will not update the encryption key of those files that have already been uploaded. The new encryption key will be used when you upload new files. This is because your files are encrypted locally; your encryption key is never sent to the server, so the server cannot decrypt your files already uploaded, nor can it encrypt them again using your new encryption key. What this means is: you must remember all your encryption keys; or you must delete all previously uploaded files and re-upload them.

System Options: Please see the screenshot below:



You can set the following options:

- Whether to automatically start DriveHQ FileManager after you logon Windows; uncheck it to stop it from automatically run;
- Show Hidden files and folders: by default FileManager hides certain files and folders (usually system folders), which are also hidden in Windows Explorer. If you need to display such folders, just check the checkbox and save it.

- Automatically start minimized: When you turn on your PC and logon Windows, DriveHQ FileManager will automatically start (which you can disable it); to avoid it from opening the application Window, you can set this option. The benefits are:
  - You can avoid opening too many Windows right after logon;
  - When you need to use FileManager, you can open it right away as it has already logged on.
- Use SSL: check this checkbox to transfer data in HTTPS/SSL. This is usually recommended if you need to transfer some very important documents that require high security.
- Display remote storage on left / Display local storage on left: by default, FileManager displays the remote storage on left-hand side; you can change it to the right-hand side.

Speed Limits: this can be used to set the maximum upload / download speed. When you

Use DriveHQ FileManager to upload / download files, by default, it could use up to 90% of your maximum bandwidth. If you also have other applications that need to access the Internet, they might compete for the bandwidth. To avoid DriveHQ FileManager from using too much bandwidth and making your other applications too slow, you can limit the upload / download speed.

🔯 DriveHQ FileManage	r - Connection X
<ul> <li>My Profile</li> <li>Account Balance</li> <li>Change Password</li> <li>My Options</li> <li>Subscription</li> <li>Encrypted Folder</li> <li>System Options</li> <li>Speed Limits</li> <li>Folder Options</li> <li>Group Account</li> </ul>	About the speed: Set speed limits to avoid FileManager using all bandwidth. Setting it to a very big number will not increase your speed. The actual upload / download speed depends on: - Your local Internet connection speed. Many ISPs limit "upload" speed to only 384Kbps (45KB/sec). - The Internet speed from your ISP to DriveHQ data center. Free users might experience a little slower download speed. Maximum Upload Speed 200 KB/s (10-2048) Maximum Download Speed 200 KB/s (10-2048)
	Save Change Close

Configure Speed Limit (Bandwidth Throttling)

DriveHQ does not limit upload speed. The download speed is limited to about 200KB/sec for free service users. For paid members, the download speed limit is much higher, at least 400KB/sec to 2MB/sec dependent on your account max storage space.

Even if the speed limit is very big, it does not mean you can reach the speed limit. Please understand that the actually connection speed is dependent on many factors:

- File sizes and file types: small files tend to have a lot of overhead; compressible files such as text files, document files, HTML files can be transparently compressed and thus is much faster to upload;
- Uploading image files tend to be slower as DriveHQ server creates a thumbnail file and a preview file for each image uploaded.
- Your local Internet connection speed: Many Internet connections are asymmetric, e.g.: ADSL and Cable Modem connections. The download speed tends to be much faster than upload speed.
- The particular routing from your ISP's data center to DriveHQ data center. The connection may go through many hops. The slowest hop determines the final speed.
- If you connect to DriveHQ servers from another country, then the speed is usually dependent on the connection speed between your country and USA.

## Folder Options:



You can set remote folder options described as above in the web of DriveHQ by clicking on the lick.

## **Group Acccount:**

If you are not a group administrator, the Group Account screenshot will display as follows:



Group Account Screenshot for Non Group Admin User

You can upgrade your account to be a group account by clicking **Free Upgrade to Group Account** button. Then you will be guided to DriveHQ web to finish the steps for account upgrade.

If your account is a Group Admin account, then you will see the following Group Account screenshot:

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0



Group Account Screenshot for Group Admin User

It lists some features applied for group admin users. Click on Launch Group Admin Tool button, you will be guided to DriveHQ web to do so.

## The "Portable or No-install Version" DriveHQ FileManager

For users who use public computers, such as those in an "Internet café" or library, you may not be able to install any client software, incl. DriveHQ FileManager; in addition, many big organizations may not allow employees to install any software on company computers. In this case, users can use DriveHQ.com web-based service, or DriveHQ FTP service (if FTP is allowed). Windows Explorer can be used as a simple FTP client. You can simply enter the following address:

<u>ftp://USERNAME:PASSWORD@ftp.drivehq.com/</u> For more info, please visit the DriveHQ FTP Server Hosting Service section.

There is another good alternative solution: DriveHQ has a special version DriveHQ FileManager "Portable or No-install" Edition, which does not require installation. You can simply download it and unzip the files into a folder; you can also copy the files to a USB drive, or burn a CD/DVD. You can then double click on the file DriveHQFileManager.exe, it will launch DriveHQ FileManager. The "portable" edition might be a little less efficient, but it requires no cache folder.

The "portable or no-install" edition works just like the regular edition, except:

- It requires no installation; you can copy and remove the application folder to "install / uninstall" the software;
- It does not require a cache folder;
- It doesn't integrate with Windows Explorer. It doesn't add the "right click" menus to Windows Explorer; moreover, you cannot drag and drop files / folders from Windows Explorer to DriveHQ FileManager.
- You should not save your account info;
- When you logout, it will prompt you to delete any cached files / folders.
- It does not add a small icon in the system notification area.

🙀 File Edit View	Tools Help DriveH	HQ FileManager	= x
Z 🚖 Disconnect Upload D	My Profile Account Balance	Synchronize Options Help Display	
Image     Option     Image       Image     Image     Image       Image	Change Password Encrypted Folder Subscription My Options System Options Folder Options Speed Limits Group Account Manage My Share Manage My Publish Manage Synchronization Unregister Shell Menu Disable Drop To Explorer		30
	ize  Time Left Speed  Stat	atus   Server   Action	

## **11. DriveHQ Email Hosting Service**

DriveHQ Email Hosting service is unlike any other free email services. It is designed for businesses, not as yet another free email service.

DriveHQ email service is a real SMTP/POP3/IMAP email service compatible with almost all email client software, including Outlook and Outlook Express. You can host multiple email accounts on DriveHQ for your business.

When you register a new account on DriveHQ.com, you automatically get an email account: YourUserName@drivehq.com.

You can create more email accounts by upgrading to the Group Account. Company private domain email addresses are also supported. The maximum mailbox size is combined with your file storage size. Also, the webmail service is integrated with DriveHQ Online Storage service, so you can easily attach server files or save email attachments to your DriveHQ online folders.

## **11.1 DriveHQ Email Service is better than other free email services**

- You can access your emails online using the webmail interface from anywhere.
- You can access your emails using any email client software, incl. Outlook and Outlook Express.
- You can access your emails offline using any email client software! (Webmail won't work if you are offline.)
- You can access your emails from different computers using Outlook or Outlook Express.
- You can create multiple email accounts for your business; you can group users into a group account or sub-group accounts; you can also create contact groups.

DriveHQ can host your company private domain emails for a lot cheaper than Microsoft Exchange or Lotus Notes! Plus, it is easy, reliable and hassle free!

## 11.2 DriveHQ Email Server Hosting Service FAQ

## 1. How do I get started with DriveHQ email?

If you are not a DriveHQ member, you need to sign up now . Once you become a member, then you have an email account: USERNAME@drivehq.com. Please visit our online help pages about how to configure for Microsoft Outlook and Outlook Express . For all other email client software, please choose the default SMTP/POP3 port setting, both the SMTP and POP3 servers are mail.drivehq.com. **Please note all out-going emails require logon**.

### 2. What is the maximum email box size and what is the maximum email size?

DriveHQ offers 1GB free email box size; if you use Outlook or Outlook Express, then you can get unlimited email box sizes by downloading emails to local. The maximum email size is 10MB for non-members; 20MB for premium members. It is strongly recommended that you upgrade to premium service for Outlook email access as otherwise, there will be many restrictions.

### 3. Is it possible to email a very large file, say a 200MB file?

While it is possible for DriveHQ email to support such big email attachments, other email servers generally can only handle less than 10MB emails. So in this case, please use DriveHQ Online Storage and Sharing service. You can share any size files, or many files very easily with DriveHQ FileManager or any FTP client software.

### 4. I have a small business with 10 employees. Can I get 10 email addresses?

Yes, you can use DriveHQ Group Account service. You can easily upgrade to a group account for free, which includes one sub-user license for free. You can then create sub-accounts. Group Account service gives more flexibility. You can manage sub-accounts and sub-groups yourself. All sub-users of a paid group account are also considered as premium users.

Cost-wise, group account service is a lot cheaper than buying services individually.

### 5. What are the most frequent problems our users experience?

(1) When setting up DriveHQ email account, please make sure that "Out-going emails require logon" is checked and the logon credentials should be the same as the POP3 settings (the same as DriveHQ account logon info).

(2) Some spam-filters might incorrectly filter DriveHQ emails. In this case: check your junk/bulk mail folder and contact your other email service provider to not filter DriveHQ emails.

## 6. Can I use DriveHQ email service for sending spam emails, or sending bulk emails to a big mailing list?

Spamming is strictly prohibited. Your account will be disabled immediately should you engage in any spamming activities. As a prevention for such abuse, each user can send a limited number of emails per day. Therefore, sending bulk emails, even if legitimate emails, is not allowed.

### 7. Can I access DriveHQ email from multiple computers (using Outlook)?

Obviously, you can access DriveHQ Email using webmail from any number of computers. For Outlook access from multiple computers, please make sure you keep emails on server for a few days before you delete them. It is recommended to keep your emails on server for 5 days. For more info, please click <u>here</u>.

#### 8. How can I create my own domain email accounts?

You must be a premium user to use private domain email feature. First of all, you must own a domain name. If not, you need to register a domain with any domain registrar company, e.g. Godaddy.com, network solutions or Register.com, etc. Once you have a domain, please add a DNS MX record using their web interface. The MX record should point to DriveHQ email server: 66.220.9.56. If you have any questions, please contact your domain registrar's customer support.

#### 9. Do I need to install any specific email client software to access DriveHQ email?

No, you can access DriveHQ email from the webmail interface; or you can use any email client software, such as Outlook and Outlook Express, etc.

### 10. Can I set email rules and email filters?

Yes, using Microsoft Outlook or Outlook Express, you can setup any email rules or filters. For more info, please read **DriveHQ Advanced Email Options** section.

#### 11. How are free accounts different from paid accounts?

Due to a lot of spammers, and also to avoid competing with other free email service providers, DriveHQ free email hosting service has a lot of restrictions and is for demo purpose only. If you use our email hosting service for business, you must upgrade to a paid account.

Free accounts have less amount of storage space. If you keep a lot of files / emails on server, you could easily run out of storage space.

For SMTP, Free Service Users can send a maximum of 25 emails/day (for True Accounts, 25/day; for Free Accounts, 5/day); the maximum attachment file size is 2MB.

Premium Users can send a lot more emails/day dependent on the max storage space. Spamming is strictly prohibited. DriveHQ has automatic monitoring software that detects any spamming / scamming activities and automatically disables bad user accounts immediately without any warning. If you need to send more emails / day, please contact <a href="mailto:support@drivehq.com">support@drivehq.com</a> and explain why you need to send so many emails / day. The maximum attachment size for premium users is 20MB.

Free service users can create only one sub email account. You can upgrade to a group account and order more group user licenses.

#### 12. Can I change account usernames?

If you have a standalone account, you cannot change your username online. DriveHQ customer support can help you change it.

If you have a group account, you cannot change your primary account username online; DriveHQ customer support can help you change it.

For other group members, the group administrator(s) can help change the username. Subgroup administrators can also help change the username of a sub-user belonging to the subgroup.

#### 13. How can I administer my group / business email accounts?

Administering your Email Accounts is very easy. First of all, you must upgrade your account to Group Account. Please logon www.drivehq.com, click on My Account, then click on Group Account. Once you are a group account, you will have access to the Group Admin feature, where you can create sub-accounts, add or delete sub-accounts, allocate storage space and download bytes, etc.

#### 14. Can I import / create a lot of email accounts at once?

Yes, you can. Using the Group Admin tool, you can import many user accounts at once. You just need to create a .CSV file.

DriveHQ supports SMTP / POP3 / IMAP, so you can use any email client software to access DriveHQ Email Service. SMTP/POP3/IMAP based email is much easier to use than any web-based email services. Many email client applications offer powerful features such as message rules, advanced editing, filtering and searching, etc. You also can configure multiple email accounts in one email client. More importantly, you can easily download emails to your local computers, so that emails will be available offline; and by downloading (and deleting) emails on server, you get virtually unlimited mailbox size!

## 11.3 Configure Outlook Express for DriveHQ Email Service

1. Launch Outlook Express, in the Tools menu, click on Accounts.

2. In the Internet Accounts dialog box, click on Add , then select Mail to open the Internet Connection Wizard. Enter your Display name:

Internet Connection Wize	ard 🛛 🔀
Your Name	No.
When you send e-mail, y Type your name as you	your name will appear in the From field of the outgoing message. would like it to appear.
Display name:	john
	For example: John Smith
	< Back Next > Cancel

### 3. Enter your DriveHQ.com email address, which is in this format:

YourUserName@drivehq.com.

nternet Connection Wiza	ard
Internet E-mail Address	× ·
Your e-mail address is th	e address other people use to send e-mail messages to you.
E-mail address:	john@drivehq.com For example: someone@microsoft.com
	< Back Next > Cancel

4. Click Next, then enter E-mail Server Names. Both POP3 and SMTP (and IMAP) servers are: mail.drivehq.com.

(IMAP is also supported).

ternet Connection Wizard	Ð
E-mail Server Names	於
My incoming mail server is a POP3 verver.	
Incoming mail (POP3, IMAP or HTTP) server:	
mail.drivehq.com	
An SMTP server is the server that is used for your outgoing e-mail. Outgoing mail (SMTP) server:	
mail.drivehq.com	
< Back Next >	Cancel

5. Click Next button, it goes to the Internet Mail Logon screen. Enter your DriveHQ username and password in the required boxes. If you select Remember password option, you do not need to enter your account info again the next time you launch Outlook Express.

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

iternet Connection Wi	zard	
Internet Mail Logon		崧
Type the account nan	ne and password your Internet service provider has given you.	
Account name:	john	
_		_
Password:	Remember password	
	rovider requires you to use Secure Password Authentication ail account, select the 'Log On Using Secure Password neck box.	
Log on using Secure	Password Authentication (SPA)	
	< Back Next > C	ancel

6. Click Next button, you are almost done configuring your DriveHQ email. Click Finish to finish the wizard.

7. In order to fight spamming, DriveHQ outgoing SMTP server requires authentication, so you must configure the outgoing server. Firstly, in Tools menu, click on Accounts; in Internet Accounts page, click the Mail tab, and then click Properties button, shown as below:

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

II Mail N	lews Directory Service		Add
Account	Туре	Connection	<u>R</u> emove
🗃 mail . drivehq. co	om mail (default)	Any Available	Properties
			Set as <u>D</u> efaul
			Import
			Export
			Set Order

Click the Servers tab, check the checkbox of "My Server requires authentication". Click OK and close the dialog. You are ready to use DriveHQ email.

erver Information          My incoming mail server is a POP3 server.         Incoming mail (POP3):       mail.drivehq.com         Outgoing mail (SMTP):       mail.drivehq.com         ncoming Mail Server       Agcount name:         Password:       John
Incoming mail (POP3): mail.drivehq.com Outgoing mail (SMTP): mail.drivehq.com ncoming Mail Server Account name: John
Outgoing mail (SMTP): mail.drivehq.com nooming Mail Server Account name: John
ncoming Mail Server A <u>c</u> count name: John
Account name: John
Account name: John
Remember password
Log on using Secure Password Authentication
lutgoing Mail Server
Wy server requires authentication Settings

## **11.4 Configure Microsoft Outlook for DriveHQ Email Service**

- 1. Launch Outlook, in the Tools menu, click E-mail Accounts.
- 2. In the E-mail Accounts dialog box, select Add a new email account, then click Next button,

E-mail Accounts	? 🔀
E-mail Accounts You can change the e-mail accounts and directories that Outlook uses.	
E-mail Add a new <u>e</u> -mail account	
C View or change existing e-mail accounts	
Directory	
Add a new directory or address book	
C View or change existing directories or address books	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	<u>C</u> lose

3. In the Server Type page, select POP3 option (IMAP is also supported), then click Next button, it goes to the Internet E-mail Settings screen,

## **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

e <b>rver Type</b> You can choose	the type of server your new e-mail acount will work with.	$\leq$
	Microsoft Exchange Server Connect to an Exchange server to read e-mail, access public folders, and share documents. POP3 Connect to a POP3 e-mail server to download your e-mail. IMAP Connect to an IMAP e-mail server to download e-mail and synchronize mailbox folders. HTTP Connect to an HTTP e-mail server such as Hotmail to download e-mail and synchronize mailbox folders. Additional Server Types Connect to another workgroup or 3rd-party mail server.	

3. Enter all information in the required fields. Firstly, enter your name and DriveHQ.com E-mail address, which is like: YourUserName@drivehq.com. Then enter your user name and password in Logon Information fields. If you select Remember password option, you do not need to enter your account info again the next time you launch Outlook.

Finally, in the Server Information fields. Enter the POP3 server and SMTP server name provided by DriveHQ, both POP3 and SMTP servers are mail.drivehq.com.
# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

User Informa	tion	Server Information
Your Name:	John	Incoming mail server (POP3): mail.drivehq.com
<u>E</u> -mail Address:	John@drivehq.com	Outgoing mail server (SMTP): mail.drivehq.com
Logon Inform	ation	Test Settings
<u>U</u> ser Name:	John	After filling out the information on this screen, we recommend you test your account by clicking the button
Password:	****	below. (Requires network connection)
		Test Account Settings

5. Click Next button, you are almost done configuring your DriveHQ email account. Click Finish button to finish the configuration process.

6. DriveHQ outgoing server requires authentication, so you must configure the outgoing server. Firstly, in the Tools menu, click E-mail Accounts, then click Next button to turn to Internet E-mail Settings page. In this page, click More Setting button, select Outgoing Server tab, and select "My outgoing server (SMTP) requires authentication" as shown below. Click OK to close the dialog. You are ready to use DriveHQ email.

 Internet E-mail Settings

 General Outgoing Server
 Connection Advanced

 My outgoing server (SMTP) requires authentication

 Use same settings as my incoming mail server

 Log on using

 User Name:

 Password:

 Remember password

 Log on using Secure Password Authentication

 Cog on to incoming mail server before sending mail

 Model

 OK

# 11.5 Configure Eudora for DriveHQ Email Service

- 1. Open Eudora and go to the **Tools** menu. Select **Personalities**.
- 2. Right-click on the newly opened sub window, and choose New.
- 3. Choose Create a brand new email account.
- 4. In the Accounts Wizard dialog box, enter all information in the required fields. Firstly, enter your name and DriveHQ.com E-mail address, which is YourUserName@drivehq.com in Email Address fields as shown below:

New Account Wizard		
EUDORA	Email Ad	ldress
7	to you by your Ir	r email address which has been assigned hternet Service Provider. This address will ther people use to send email to you.
	<u>E</u> mail Address:	test@drivehq.com
Email		(e.g> cjones@isp.com)
Account Setup		
	Back Next	> Cancel Help

5. Incoming Server - mail.drivehq.com. Server type is POP (or IMAP is also supported)



6. **Outgoing mail server** (SMTP server): mail.drivehq.com

Please select the **Allow authentication** option.

New Account Wizard	
New Account Wizard	Image: Construction of the server of the
QUALCOMM'	Allow authentication
<	Back Next > Cancel Help

- 7. Now right-click on the newly created account and choose **Properties.**
- 8. Please set the Secure sockets when sending to Never.

Secure sockets when receiving should also be set to Never.

9. You are done!

# 11.6 Configure Lotus Notes for DriveHQ Email Service

1. Launch Lotus Notes, choose File - Preferences - Client Reconfiguration Wizard. Select Internet mail servers, and then click on Next.

tus Notes Client C	onfiguration	?
Internet	Additional Services	
	Please select the services you would like to Domino serve Connection Local Area Network	
- Jest	<ul> <li>✓ Internet mail servers (POP or IMAP, SMTP)</li> <li>□ Newsgroup server (NNTP)</li> <li>□ Directory server (LDAP)</li> </ul>	
	Connection  Local Area Network	-
Internet	<u>Replication settings for sending and receive</u>	ving
ettings apply to th		Cancel

2. Enter all information in the required boxes. Firstly, enter your DriveHQ E-mail address, which is YourUserName@drivehq.com. Then enter DriveHQ domain: drivehq.com.

Lotus Notes Client Co	nfiguration ? 🗙		
Internet	Set Up Internet Mail		
	Your e-mail address is what others use to send messages to you. This address has been assigned to <u>E</u> -mail address		
	test@drivehq.com		
F->	For example:		
	If you send mail to anyone who uses a Notes/Domino mail address, enter the Internet domain name of the Domino mail server.		
	For example, if the Domino server Mailbag/Acme has the address mailbag acme.com, then the Internet domain name would be acme.com.		
Mail	<u>I</u> nternet domain		
Iviali	drivehq. com		
	✓ Previous Next > Cancel		

3. Enter the POP3 server name provided by DriveHQ.com: mail.drivehq.com.

Lotus Notes Client Con	nfiguration	? ×
Internet	Set Up Internet Mail	
	Select the type of server used for retrieving	
	POP	
	Enter a new account name, or use the one prov to refer to this server. To modify an existi:	
	Incoming Internet mail	
	Enter the name of your Internet Service Provi POP or IMAP mail server for incoming e-mail Incoming mail server	der's
	mail. drivehq. com	
Mail	For example: pop.ign.ibm.com	
	< Previous Next >	Cancel

4. Enter your DriveHQ user name and password in Account Information boxes.

Lotus Notes Client Con	figuration ? 🗙
Internet	Set Up Internet Mail         Enter your Internet account login name and password.         Account name       test         Pagsword       XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Mail	Some ISPs require that you log on using Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) to access your e-mail account. ▼ Log on using S 

5. Enter the SMTP server name provided by DriveHQ.com: mail.drivehq.com. You are ready to use DriveHQ email. Click **Next** button to finish the configuration process.

Lotus Notes Client Cor	nfiguration ? 🗙
	Set Up Internet Mail
	Enter a new account name, or use the one provided, to refer to this server. To modify an existing account, choose it from the list.
	Outgoing Internet mail Enter the name of your Internet Service Provider's SMTP server. The SMTP server handles your outgoing e-mail messages. Outgoing SMTP mail server
	mail. drivehq. com
Lotus Notes.7	For example: smtp.ign.ibm.com
	✓ Previous Next ➤ Cancel

## 11.7 Configure your private domain email addresses

To configure private domain email addresses on DriveHQ.com, you must have a domain name; if you don't have a domain name yet, you can register your own domain name through any domain registrar companies, such as GoDaddy.com, Network Solutions or Register.com, etc.

You can then add a "DNS A Record", i.e. add a server name: mail.YOURDOMAIN (e.g. mail.drivehq.com) to 69.220.9.56;

If you represent a big company with its own DNS servers, then you can add the "DNS A Record" from your own domain name server;

If you are a small business, you probably don't have your own DNS server. In this case, you can use your domain registrar's DNS server directly. Logon your domain registrar's website, you can manage your domain(s), and add DNS A-Record, etc.

If your domain name is currently registered with Register.com and if you use Register.com's Domain Name System Servers (DNS Servers), then you can modify this information online by signing into **Account Manager**, and selecting the domain name you wish to make the changes to from the main menu.

Click on the link "Edit IP Address (A Record)" from the ADVANCED TECHNICAL SETTINGS menu. This will open a page on which there will be an editable list of all of the IP Addresses (A Records) associated with the domain name, shown as below: Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

add more IP a	ddresses by filling in the field			<u>ddress changes take effec</u> e when finished.
1	.photosharehq.com	points to	66.220.9.55	Delete
	.photosharehq.com	points to		Delete
	.photosharehq.com	points to		Delete
mail	.photosharehq.com	points to	66.220.9.56	Delete
WWW	.photosharehq.com	points to	66.220.9.55	Delete
	.photosharehq.com	points to		
	.photosharehq.com	points to		

To host you private domain email address, you need to add an A-Record of '**mail**" that resolves to DriveHQ email server: **66.220.9.56**. After you have made the necessary changes, click **Continue** to apply the changes.

You also need to add an "MX Record" to your DNS server. Below is an example of adding an MX record using register.com website.

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

				before my MX R		
Add more MX re	cords by filling in the field	s below.		Server	hen finished.	
	.videosharehq.com	Low	► mail.	videosharehq.com		
	.videosharehq.com	Low	*			
Add more MX re						

Click **Continue** again to confirm the changes. Please note it takes about 24hours for a DNS name to be updated on the Internet.

	MY AC	COUNT: LOGOUT	VIEW CART	CUSTOMER SUPPORT	FAQS	WHOIS
CONFIRM	CHAI	NGES TO N	AX RECO	RD		
Please click Con	i <mark>tinue</mark> to c	confirm your chan	ges, or correct	any errors by clicking E	dit.	
Host Name videosharehq.co		ty Mail Server mail.videoshare	ehq.com			
Edit 🕟				Cance	I) (C	Continue

Once you have finished the process above, you should go back to the page of DriveHQ Email Options, shown as below:

Email Options [Go to Account Options]	
tepty emails Sand reply emails to DriveHQ email account Sand reply emails to my external email account Ihe fellowing 5 features are only available to business service users; (1) Custom domain email (2) Email Drawding (3) Email usus reply 4) Email disess i Available to group admin users or non-group-member users (3) Email maling fist: Available to group admin users or non-group-member users	
Custom Email Domain           0:4-1 7         Custom Email Domain:           Custom Email Domain:         (e.g.: YourDomain.com. Leave empty if yourdomain.com.	Check DNS MX Record for the Domain u don't use DriveHQ email service) <u>Hide Help</u>
Auto reply	
Submit	

Type in your email domain name in the **Custom Email Domain** Field. Click on **Check DNS MX Record for the Domain** to check the result. Then click **Submit**.

# 11.9 DriveHQ Webmail

DriveHQ webmail is built with HTTP/HTTPS. It offers convenient access to your emails and contacts. Moreover, it offers comprehensive email management, group management, contact management functions and more advanced options and features.

To access DriveHQ Webmail, you can visit <u>www.drivehq.com</u>, click on "Logon" link in the top-right corner, it goes to the logon page where you can select go to "Email Hosting" as shown in the screenshot below:

	Please l	₋og On
	Username:	
600-	Password:	
	Go to:	Online Storage  Logon
	<u>Sign up Free</u>	Online Storage Ftp Backup Email Hosting Indiction

Enter your username / password to logon; it will go to the DriveHQ Email Hosting Service homepage as shown below. Alternatively if you have already logged on, you can click on "All Services" link, then select "Email Hosting Service" as shown below:

Drive Headquarters <sup>™</sup> Redefine the online storage	Log out   All Services   Features & Plans   E All DriveHQ Service DriveHQ FTP Server Hosting re
	DriveHQ Online Backup
Welcome <u>FreeDrivehg</u> ! <u>Group Admin</u>	DriveHQ Email Hosting

Accessing other DriveHQ email service by clicking on "All services" link

Drive Headquarte	rs™		All Services   Enterprise Se	ervice   Partnership   Log out
The Best Email Hosting Serv		Email Plans	FAQ Support	Webmail My Account
Welcome <u>FreeDriveha</u> ! <u>Grou</u>	o Admin			
📑 New 🔻 🙀 Delete	🔍 Find	Put In Folder 🛛 🕞 Er	nail Options	0
MailBoxes	Sent		The number of records per p	age: <u>20</u> <u>50</u> 100
		<u>From</u>	<u>Subject</u>	<u>Time</u>
😭 Draft		FreeDrivehq@drivehq.com	project5	21:24 66 B
		FreeDrivehq@drivehq.com	project4	21:24 66 B
		FreeDrivehq@drivehq.com	project3	21:24 66 B
⊕ EMBackupData		FreeDrivehq@drivehq.com	project2	21:23 66 B
🗟 Mail		FreeDrivehq@drivehq.com	You account ha	<u>s</u> 07/15/2010 1 КВ
🔄 Folder				
👶 Contact				
⇒ BBS	Folder Size	: 2 KB Total:5 Unread: <b>5</b>	The number of records per p	age: <u>20</u> <u>50</u> 100

DriveHQ Email Hosting service home page

DriveHQ webmail works just like other web-based email hosting services. You can compose new emails, reply, forward, delete and search emails; you can also move emails between different email folders.

## 11.10 DriveHQ Advanced Email Options

From DriveHQ Email Hosting Service home page, click on Email Options as highlighted above, it will go to the email options page:

Drive Headquarter	
The Best Email Hosting Servi	ce Email Plans FÀQ Support Webmail M
Welcome <u>FreeDrivehq</u> ! <u>Group</u>	Admin
New <b>V</b>	
Email Options Primary Email Address Custom Email Domain Email Aliases Group Email Addresses Email Auto Forward Email Auto Reply Email Signature Safe and blocked senders Bulk Controls Email Rule	Email Options       [Account Options]         Primary email address: <ul> <li>Send reply emails to DriveHQ email account (FreeDrivehq@drivehq.com)</li> <li>Send reply emails to my external email account (</li> <li>Save</li> </ul>
Mail	
Folder	
🐉 Contact	
💬 BBS	

DriveHQ Email Options screen

As you can see from the screenshot, DriveHQ email service has a lot of advanced options.

**Primary Email Address:** If you registered a DriveHQ account using an external email address, your account is associated with two email accounts: one is <u>USERNAME@drivehq.com</u>, the other one is your external email account. This option sets whether to use your DriveHQ email address or your external email address as the primary email address.

**Custom Domain Email:** You can use your private email domain for your email address(es). Note you must have a domain before you can use private domain email address. You also need to add a DNS MX Record such that your email server for the domain is: mail.YOURDOMAINNAME. You also need to add DNS A-Record such that mail.YOURDOMAINNAME resolves to 66.220.9.56.

**Email Alias:** If you have a custom domain, your email address is like: USERNAME@YOURDOMAIN, <u>USERNAME@drivehq.com</u> also works. Because DriveHQ system has over one million registered users, so your preferred username might have been taken. In this case, you can create an alias email address as: ALIASNAME@YOURDOMAINNAME

**Group Email Addresses:** You can manage custom email addresses, email aliases, manage mailing lists and creating new email accounts (new sub-user).

**Email Auto Forward:** You can automatically forward emails sent to your DriveHQ email account to a different email address. You can keep the email in your DriveHQ account or delete the email after forward.

**Email Auto Reply:** You can send an automatic reply email when you receive a new email. You can customize the automatic reply email template.

**Email Signature:** You can append an automatic email signature at the end of each email sent to other users.

**Safe and blocked senders:** you can customize DriveHQ's email filter feature by adding safe and blocked email lists. See the screenshot below.

Email Options	Safe Sender         Safe Recipients         Blocked Sender	
▶ Primary Email Address		
▶ Custom Email Domain	💒 E-mail from addresses or domain names on your Blocked Senders List will alway	L
▶ Email Aliases	be blocked!	L
▶ Group Email Addresses		L
▶ Email Auto Forward	>>>	L
▶ Email Auto Reply		L
▶ Email Signature	1. Enter an e-mail address or internet domain to	L
Safe and blocked senders		L
▶ Bulk Controls	2. Example: example@example.com, @example.com	L
▶ Email Rule	wexamme.com	L
		L
		L
		L
		L
		L
		L
		L
		L
🐻 Mail		L
Folder		
😤 Contact	Save	
💬 BBS		1

Bulk Controls: controls how to treat bulk emails.

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Email Options	Bulk Controls
▶ Primary Email Address	
▶ Custom Email Domain	Bulk Levels:
▶ Email Aliases	Select the bulk level you want to apply to incoming messages.
▶ Group Email Addresses ▶ Email Auto Forward	O <b>Off</b> Advanced Bulk Filters are off. Messages suspected as Bulk will still be delivered to your Inbox.
▶ Email Auto Reply	C Low Only obvious Bulk messages will be identified and delivered to the Bulk folder.Some Bulk mess ages may be delivered to your Inbox.
Email Signature     Safe and blocked senders	• Medium Almost all Bulk will be identified and delivered to your Bulk folder.
▶ Bulk Controls	$^{ m O}$ High Virtually all Bulk will be identified and delivered to your Bulk Folder.
▶ Email Rule	Delete bulk e-mail:
🐻 Mail	Choose when bulk e-mail is deleted.
Folder	• Later - Bulk e-mail is automatically moved into the Bulk e-mail folder, where it is deleted manual!
👶 Contact	$^{ m O}$ Immediately - Bulk e-mail is deleted immediately(if the e-mail sent by your blocked sender).
💬 BBS	Save Cancel

Bulk email control screen

You can configure the filter level of bulk email control feature. You can also configure when to delete those filtered bulk emails.

**Email Rules:** If you use other email client software such as Outlook, you can configure email rules using Outlook. If you use DriveHQ webmail mostly, then you can configure your email rules.

Email Options	Edit Rule	^
Primary Email Address		-
Custom Email Domain	Rule Name:	
▶ Email Aliases		
▶ Group Email Addresses	Account: FreeDrivehq@drivehq.com	
▶ Email Auto Forward	From:	
▶ Email Auto Reply		≡
▶ Email Signature	To:	
Safe and blocked senders	Subject:	
▶ Bulk Controls		
▶ Email Rule	Body:	
		-
		-
🐻 Mail	Action: Move to special message box 💙 [Destination message box] <u>Select</u>	
🔁 Folder		
😤 Contact	Save Cancel	
		~
💬 BBS	()	

DriveHQ Email Rules screen

You can configure the system to automatically route certain emails to certain folders.

#### 11.10.1. Background Info about Email Protocols

DriveHQ Email hosting service supports SMTP, POP3, IMAP

#### POP3 Email Service (Receiving emails)

Post Office Protocol version 3 (POP3) is a standard mail protocol used to receive emails from a remote server to a local email client. POP3 allows you to download email messages on your local computer and read them even when you are offline. A lot of Email Clients, such as Outlook and Outlook Express can keep emails on DriveHQ Email Server. Thus, you can access DriveHQ Email account from different computers using Outlook. Both computers can receive the same incoming emails. All outgoing emails are saved in your local email box, which is not synchronized with DriveHQ webmail and is also not synchronized among multiple computers.

#### SMTP Service (sending emails)

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the standard protocol for sending emails across the Internet. SMTP uses TCP port 25. Sometimes you can have problems sending emails if your ISP has blocked port 25 for controlling spamming emails. To determine the SMTP server for a given domain name, the MX (Mail eXchange) DNS record is used.

IMAP Service (Remote email folders)

The **Internet Message Access Protocol** (**IMAP**) is one of the two most prevalent email protocols for e-mail retrieval. The current version of IMAP is 4.0

There are some advantages and disadvantages of IMAP4 over POP3. A detailed comparison is beyond the scope of this document.

The main advantages of IMAP over POP3 are: IMAP can keep multiple mail boxes on server; e.g. you can keep your "inbox" and "sent" boxes on DriveHQ email server. This way, you can configure IMAP email accounts on multiple computers and all computers can access the same mail boxes; in particular, if you sent an email on Computer A, you can find the same email on Computer B in the same "sent" mail box.

## 11.11. DriveHQ Web-based Address Book / Contacts

From DriveHQ Webmail homepage, click on "Contact" link in the left-hand side, it will go to the Contact main page, as shown below:

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Drive Headquarte	rs™		All Services   Ente	erprise Service   Par	rtnership   Log ou	t
The Best Email Hosting Serv		Email Plans	FÁQ Suppor	rt Webmail	My Account	)
/elcome <u>FreeDrivehq</u> ! <u>Grou</u> j	o Admin					
📑 New 🔻 🛛 🙀 Delete	🛃 Edit 🛛 🔤 Send	🔍 Search	😫 Move/Copy	📆 Empty		2
Contact Group List	Friends		The number of re	ecords per page: 2	20 <u>50</u> 100	1/1 ♥  >
ੇ Contact Root ਰੂ⊷ ॡਿਲ੍ਹੇ My Contacts	<u>Name</u> △	<u>Email</u>			Cell Phone	Home Phone
- Friends	webmaster	webma	ster@DriveHQ.com			
Blocked						
Group Contacts						
import Contacts						
	•					
🐻 Mail						
Folder						
🔥 Contact						
💬 BBS	Add Delete	e Edit	The number of re	ecords per page: 2	<b>20 50</b> 100	<  1/1 ▼ ▷

DriveHQ Contact main page

On the left-hand side, you can see the "contact folder tree". Contacts are divided into 2 parts:

- My Contacts: those contacts are created by me and remain private;
- Group Contacts: those contacts shared by other DriveHQ group users.

You can also click on "Manage Contact Group" or "Import Contacts" links to create / add / edit contact lists.

#### 11.11.1. Create Contact Groups

Before you create a contact, you must create a contact group first. The system automatically creates a contact group named "Friends". You can create more contact groups. To create a contact group, click on Contact Root, then click on the Add button, it will go to the "Create contact group" page:

Contact Group List	Create contact group	^
My Contacts	Parent path: \	
	Contact Group Name: AllCompanyContacts	≡
Group Contacts	Contact Group Description: All contacts in the compar	
Manage Contact Group	Share to the group: Full Access	
Import Contacts	Mailing list type: Private mailing list	
Mail		
Folder	Save Cancel	
👶 Contact	Note:	
🕮 Calendar	By default, you only create a Contact Group, which is not a mailing list. A cor oup can also be used in sharing a folder, where you can share a folder to per	
💬 BBS	<pre></pre>	-

Create a contact group screen

In the above screen, you can enter a contact group name, description, and then select the "Share" and "mailing list" properties.

You can select the following options for "Share to the group" property:

- Not shared: this is a private contact group. No other user can see it.Read-only: this contact group is shared all group members with read-only access.
- Update access: this contact group is shared to all group members with update access;
- Full access: this contact group is shared to all group members with full access right.

For the "mailing list type" property, you can choose from the following options:

- Not a mailing list: It is just a contact group, (i.e. a contact folder) and cannot be used as a mailing list;
- Private mailing list: This contact group can only be used by myself as a mailing list.
- Domain mailing list: Only people in this group account can send emails to this mailing list;
- Public mailing list: anybody on the Internet can send emails to this mailing list;

To fight spammers, a mailing list cannot have more than 100 email addresses. DriveHQ has added a lot of other technologies to fight spammers. Spamming is automatically monitored and strictly prohibited. Spammer accounts are automatically disabled in real-time without any warnings.

To create a mailing list, you must be a premium user. Free users and group member users cannot create mailing lists.

A contact group is also used in group file sharing and collaborations. You can share different folders to different contact groups and set different levels of access rights. Once you have shared

a folder to a contact group, you can add a contact in the contact group to give the new person access to the shared folder. If you want to stop sharing the folder to one user, you can remove it from the contact group.

#### **11.11.2.** Create contacts

Click on a contact group name in the left-hand side of contact main page, then click on "New" and select "Contact", it will go to "Create contact page".

Contact Group List	Create contact in AllCompanyContacts					
Contact Root	First name: dhqtest11 last n		last name:	dhqtest11		
	Email:	dhqtest11@drivehq.com		Home Phone:		
AllCompanyContacts	Cell Phone:			Work phone:		
Group Contacts	Address line 1:			Address line 2:		
Manage Contact Group Import Contacts	City:			Company name:		
	Country:	United States	~	State:	Please select a state	*
•	Zip:					
	Note:					
	This is the co	ntact info for the user accou	nt dhqtes	11 🔺 🌈		
🐻 Mail					)	
🔁 Folder				NO P	ното	
👶 Contact				Sel	ect	
🕮 Calendar						
💬 BBS	Save	Cancel				
		Create a cont	4	_		

Create a contact page

In the "Create contact" page, you can enter all info; or you must enter first name, last name, and email fields. If the contact is a DriveHQ member, you can enter his/her registered email address, or enter his/her DriveHQ email address (<u>USERNAME@drivehq.com</u>).

#### 11.11.3. Batch creating contacts, importing contacts from Outlook / Gmail

For companies with a lot of employees, or for users with lots of contacts, creating contacts one by one is tedious and could take a long time. DriveHQ offers advanced tools to batch create / import a lot of contacts at once.

To import contacts, please click on the "Import Contacts" link in the left-hand side. It will display the following screen:

Contact Group List		act list CSV template file		CSV file you can <u>download</u> an excel map file.
	Country:	United States	State:	Please select a state
<u>Manage Contact Group</u> <u>Import Contacts</u>	Country ID:	223	State ID:	0
🗟 Mail	<ul> <li>Import</li> <li>Back to contact</li> </ul>	t group list		
Contact				
🕮 Calendar				
💬 BBS				

Import contacts from Gmail or from a CSV file

You can import contacts from gmail account, or you can import contacts from a .CSV file. CSV means "comma separated values". Basically it is just a text file like:

Name,	Phone,	Fax,	email
John Doe,	123-456-7890,	123-456-7891,	johndoe@drivehq.com

A lot of applications support CSV files, e.g. Microsoft Excel can save a spreadsheet as a CSV file. Microsoft Office Outlook can also export contacts as a CSV file. Just click on Contacts, then select from Outlook's File menu, and select "Import and Export", then choose "Export to a file", it will display the following dialog:



Export Outlook contacts as a CSV file

# 12. DriveHQ Email Manager (Email Backup)

DriveHQ Email Manager is the first email backup program that can manage your emails and contacts like files, drag-&-drop or automatically backup your Outlook / Outlook Express / Windows Mail in real-time or scheduled times.

DriveHQ Email Manager is designed to be very similar to DriveHQ FileManager, which has been downloaded by more than 500K users. The default dual-pane interface allows users to easily drag and drop emails, contacts and mailboxes from their local PC to DriveHQ online email system. Users can change the interface to only show local emails or DriveHQ emails.

The latest version 2.0 build 70 has added support for Windows 7, Windows 2008 and 64-bit operating systems.

# 12.1 DriveHQ Email Manager Advantages

- The most important feature of DriveHQ EmailManager is it can backup and restore emails one by one. Almost all other email backup software can only backup / restore Outlook .pst files, you cannot backup / restore a single email. Because .pst files are very large and always locked by Outlook, it can take a very long time to backup or restore your emails; if backup fails in the middle, you might have to start all over again. With DriveHQ Email Manager, you can easily backup your emails / contacts using drag and drop.
- You can set real-time or scheduled backup tasks to automatically backup your emails & address book even when Outlook is running!
- Because DriveHQ Email Manager can backup emails one-by-one, and it can automatically resume interrupted uploads / downloads, it is extremely reliable and efficient.
- You can access backed-up emails / contacts from anywhere using DriveHQ webmail.
- You can easily migrate your emails from one computer to another computer using drag and drop..

# 12.2 DriveHQ EmailManager (Email Backup Service) Pricing

DriveHQ Email Manager is powered by DriveHQ's advanced email hosting system. You can backup your Outlook, Outlook Express or Windows Mail emails to DriveHQ Email Hosting

system using DriveHQ EmailManager. The basic service is free, but with a lot of restrictions and is designed for personal and casual use only. DriveHQ EmailManager is not included in the DriveHQ Email Hosting service.

# 12.3 Get started with DriveHQ EmailManager

## 12.3.1 Install DriveHQ EmailManager client software

You can download DriveHQ EmailManager software installer online from the DriveHQ software download page:

#### http://www.drivehq.com/downloads/DownloadEmailManager.aspx

Currently DriveHQ EmailManager only has 32-bit version, which also works on 64-bit operating systems. Before you download, please make sure you have Microsoft Office installed, or you use Outlook Express for your emails.

After you have downloaded the installer, you can double click on it to launch the setup. Just follow the wizard and it should be easy to install the software. After you have finished installing the software, you can launch it at the end of setup wizard. By default, DriveHQ EmailManager automatically starts after the user logs on Windows. You can disable "auto start" from the "Options" menu, click on System Options, then uncheck the check box "Automatically run when I logon Windows", then click on "Save Change" to apply the change(s).

#### 12.3.2 Logon DriveHQ EmailManager

Launch DriveHQ EmailManager and Logon (it could take 1-2 minutes dependent on the number of emails in your account.), you will see the Application's Main Screen. (See the screenshot below). DriveHQ Email Manager's main screen consists of three panes:

- The remote email pane;
- The local email pane;
- The email upload / download task management pane, which shows the list of emails being transferred and their progress info.

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🔋 File Edit View Options Help 🛛 DriveHQ Email Manager 🗕 🗖 🗙									
Disconnect Backup	Disconnect Backup Restore Options Help View								
00 🖻 🖆 X 🎜				🖸 🖸 🖆 🗙	2				
Remote Email: 🔞 Remote	Email Root	-	]	Local Email: 闷 \Persor	nal Folders	-			
Name Inbox Sent Draft Draft Draft Draft Draft Draft Draft Draft Draft DractRootFolder Friends Blocked Reemo	3 521 0 0 0 0 <b>te Pa</b>	Time	Speed   Ge	Name  Deleted Items Inbox Inbox Contacts Drafts Dunk E-mail  Status Local Fol		er Folder   Mode			
Resume Stop	Delete	Ready							

DriveHQ EmailManager main screen

## Show/Hide Email Panes:

You can click on the "View" button on the toolbar to select:

- show DriveHQ.com remote emails only;
- show both local and DriveHQ.com emails;
- show local emails only

## Show/Hide Task Management Pane for Email Transfer

You can show / hide the pane by clicking on the **example** button.

# 12.4 Manage local emails and folders

In the local emails pane, you can manage local emails and folders (mailboxes) in the same way as in Windows Explorer (or DriveHQ FileManager). In specific, you can

- 1. <u>Navigate through local emails and folders</u> (mailboxes)
- 2. Create new local email folders
- 3. Rename local email folders
- 4. <u>Copy / paste local emails and folders</u>
- 5. Delete local emails and folders
- 6. <u>Create a new sub folder</u>
- 7. Rename a new sub folder
- 8. <u>Cut / copy & paste a sub folder</u>
- 9. Delete a sub folder
- 10. Drag / Drop a sub folder

## 1. Navigate through local emails and folders

- Select the destination folder from the dropdown list on the top right corner;
- Enter a folder by double-clicking it in the local pane;
- Click Set to go to the folder visited previously;
- Click 💟 to go to the folder visited next;
- Click 🖆 to go to the parent folder.

#### 2. Create new local email folders

- First, please make sure you navigate to a location where you see real email folders, such as "inbox".
- Click on button to create a new email folder, and specify the folder name; or right-click on a blank area in the local emails pane, select "New" from the popup menu.

#### 3. Rename local email folders

Click the email folder to rename, click again or right-click and select "**Rename**" from the popup menu; once the name edit box is shown, enter the new name.

#### 4. Copy / Paste local emails and folders

Right-click on the emails / folders to copy, and select **Copy** from the popup menu; Navigate to the destination email folder; right-click on a blank area in the local emails pane, select **Paste** from the popup menu.

#### 5. Delete local emails and folders

Select the emails / folders to delete, click on Button or press "**Delete**" key; Select "**Yes**" on the confirmation message box if you want to delete.

#### 6. Create a new sub folder

• Select the folder, and then click on button to create a new sub folder, and specify the new folder name;

🕤 File Edit View	Options Help	Dri	veHQ Email	Manager		_ = ×			
Disconnect Backup	Restore	<b>Options</b>	? Help	View View					
<b>○</b> ○ ☆ ☆ <i>X Z</i> <b>○</b> ○ ☆ ☆ <i>X Z</i>									
Remote Email: 🔞 Remote	Email Root		•	Local Email: 😡 \Personal	Folders	•			
Name     Unread       Inbox     1       Sent     3       Draft     12       Trash     521       Bulk     0       ContactRootFolder     0       Friends     0       Blocked     0		Total 1 7 12 564 0 0 4 0		Name Deleted Items Inbox Outbox Sent Items Contacts Drafts Junk E-mail	Unread 0 0 0 0 0 0	Total 0 1102 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0			

Navigate to a location where it displays mail box list

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🕞 File Edit View	Options Help	Driv	veHQ Email	Manager		_ = ×		
Disconnect Backup	Restore	<b>Options</b>	? Help	View				
Remote Email: 🙆 Remote	Email Root		•	Local Email: 😡 \Persona	al Folders	•		
Name       Unread         Inbox       1         Sent       3         Draft       12         Trash       521         Bulk       0         ContactRootFolder       0         Friends       0         Blocked       0		Total 1 7 12 564 0 0 4 0		Name	Unread 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Total 0 1102 0 0 1 0 0 0		

Select a destination folder and then click on the new folder icon.

🕞 File Edit View	Options Help	Dri	veHQ Emai	Manager		_ = ×
Disconnact Backup	Restore	Options	? Help	Viaw -		
00 🖻 🖆 X 🎜				🖸 🖸 🖆 🗡	2	
Remote Email: 🙆 Remote	Email Root		-	Local Email: 😡 \Perso	onal Folders	•
Name Inbox Sent Draft Trash Bulk Se ContactRootFolder Se Friends Blocked	Unread 1 3 12 521 0 0 0 0 0	Total 1 7 12 564 0 4 0		Name Deleted Items Intervent Cont Copy Copy Dr Paste Delete New	Unread 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Total 0 1102 0 1 0 0 0 0

Right click on the target folder, then click on "New" from the popup menu to create a new folder

🖣 File Edit View	Options Help	Dri	veHQ Email	Manager		_ = ×			
Disconnect Backup	Restore	Options	? Help	View -					
Remote Email: 🔞 Remote	Remote Email: CRemote Email Root   Local Email: Remote Folders								
Name Inbox Sent Draft Trash Bulk Se ContactRootFolder Se Friends Se Blocked	Remote Email: CRemote Email Root       Name     Unread       Import     1       Sent     3       Part     12       Trash     521       Bulk     0       EcontactRootFolder     0       Friends     0			Name Deleted Items Inbox Note: Outbox Sent Items Contacts Drafts Outb E-mail	Unrea 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	nd Total 0 1102 0 0 1 0 1 0 0 0			

Created a new folder; waiting to change the folder name

#### 7. Rename a new sub folder

Right click on the target sub folder and select "**Rename**" option from the popup menu; once the name edit box is shown, enter the new name,

#### 8. Cut / copy & paste a sub folder

Right click on the sub folder, then select "**Cut/Copy**" from the popup menu; navigate to the target folder; right click the local emails, select "**Paste**" from the popup menu.

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Name       Unread       Total         Image: Sector and the sector	🕞 File Edit View O	ptions Help	Driv	/eHQ Email	Manager		- = ×
Name       Unread       Total         Name       Unread       Total         Inbox       1       1         Sent       3       7         Draft       12       12         Trash       521       564         Bulk       0       0         Friends       0       0         Friends       0       0         Friends       0       0         Blocked       0       0         Junk E-m       0       0         Blocked       0       0			Options	(?) Help	View View		
Name       Unread       Total         Inbox       1       1         Inbox       1       1         Sent       3       7         Draft       12       12         Trash       521       564         Bulk       0       0         ContactRootFolder       0       0         Friends       0       4         Blocked       0       0         Blocked       0       0	00 🖻 🖆 X 🎜				0 0 🖻 🖆 X 🍣		
Imbox       1       1         Imbox       1       1         Imbox       3       7         Imbox       12       12         Imbox       12       12         Imbox       521       564         Imbox       0       0         Imbox <th>Remote Email: 🔞 Remote E</th> <th>mail Root</th> <th></th> <th>•</th> <th>Local Email: 😡 \Personal f</th> <th>Folders</th> <th>•</th>	Remote Email: 🔞 Remote E	mail Root		•	Local Email: 😡 \Personal f	Folders	•
	Inbox Sent Draft Trash Bulk SentactRootFolder	1 3 12 521 0 0 0	1 7 12 564 0 0 4		Deleted Items Colleague Client Cut Cut Copy Drafts Junk E-m Delete	0 0 0	0 1102 0 0 0 1 1 0 0

Right click on a subfolder to copy (or cut)

ှ File Edit View	Options Help	Driv	veHQ Email	Manager			- = ×
Disconnect Backup	Restore	<b>Options</b>	? Help	View			
00 🖻 🖆 X 🎜				O O 🖻 🖆	X2		
Remote Email: CRemote	Email Root		-	Local Email: 😡 🖓	ersonal Fold	ers	-
Name Inbox Sent Draft Trash Bulk Se ContactRootFolder Friends Blocked	Unread 1 3 12 521 0 0 0 0	Total 1 7 12 564 0 0 4 0		Sent Ite	s 0 0	Unread 0 11 0 0 0 1 0 0 0	Total 02

#### Right click on a destination folder to paste

🕞 File Edit View	Options Help	Dri	veHQ Email	Manager		_ 0	×			
Disconnect Backup Restore Options Help View										
00 🖻 🖆 X 🕄										
Remote Email: 🔞 Remote	Remote Email: CRemote Email Root   Local Email: VPersonal Folders									
Name       Unread         Inbox       1         Sent       3         Draft       12         Trash       521         Bulk       0         ContactRootFolder       0         Friends       0         Blocked       0		Total 1 7 12 564 0 0 4 0		Name Deleted Items Inbox Colleague Contacts Contacts Contacts Contacts Contacts Contacts Colleague C	Unread 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Total 0 1102 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 0				

Finished copying an email folder

#### 9. Delete a sub folder

Select the sub folder to delete, click on Button or select "Delete" option from the right-click menu; Select "Yes" on the confirmation message box if you want to delete.

## **10.** Drag / drop a sub folder

Select the target sub folder (make sure it is a real mail box), then drag & drop this folder to the destination local folder. This is the same as cut-paste a sub folder.

# Drive Headquarters<sup>™</sup> Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🖣 File Edit View	Options Help	Dri	veHQ Emai	l Manager		- ¤ ×				
Disconnect Backup	Restore	<b>Options</b>	? Halp	View						
00 🖻 🖆 X 🎜	○ ○ ☆ ☆ × ぞ ○ ○ ☆ ☆ × ぞ									
Remote Email: 🔞 Remote	Email Root		•	Local Email: 😡 \Persona	al Folders	-				
Name       Unread         Inbox       1         Sent       3         Draft       12         Trash       521         Bulk       0         ContactRootFolder       0         Friends       0         Blocked       0		Total 1 7 12 564 0 0 4 0		Name Deleted Items Colleague Cient Cuttorate Cient Cuttorate Contacts Conta	Unread         Total           0         0           0         1102           0         0           0         0           0         0           0         0           0         0           0         0           0         0           0         0           0         0           0         0           0         0           0         0           0         0					
L		_								

Drag & drop a local email folder

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🕞 File Edit View 🛛	Options Help	Dri	veHQ Emai	l Manager		- = ×			
Disconnect Backup	Restore	Options	? Halp	View View					
00 🖻 🖆 X 🎜									
Remote Email: 🔞 Remote	Email Root		-	Local Email: 闷 \Person	al Folders	-			
Name Inbox Sent Draft Trash Bulk ScontactRootFolder Friends Blocked	Unread 1 3 12 521 0 0 0 0 0	Total 1 7 12 564 0 4 0		Name Deleted Items Inbox Inbox Iclient Outbox Iclient	Unread 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Total 0 1102 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0			

The selected email folder has been drag & dropped (moved) to the Outbox folder

# 12.5 Manage online emails and folders

#### 12.5.1 Your default DriveHQ email account

When you register a new user account on DriveHQ.com, you automatically receive an email account. The email address is <u>YourUserName@drivehq.com</u> (or custom domain email is also supported). You can manage your DriveHQ emails from the Online Emails Pane. By default, your DriveHQ email account has five email folders: Inbox, Sent, Draft, Trash and Bulk; it also has two contact groups: Friends and Blocked.

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Remote Email Root	Name	Unread	Total
Inbox Sent Draft Bulk ContactRootFolder Sel Friends Blocked	Inbox Sent Draft Trash Bulk ContactRootFolder Friends Blocked	1 3 12 521 0 0 0 0	1 7 12 564 0 0 4 0

DriveHQ account default email folders and contact groups

#### 12.5.2 Manage Online Emails and Folders

In the remote emails pane, you can manage your online emails and folders in the same way as in Windows Explorer. In specific, you can

#### 1. Navigate through online emails and folders

- Select the destination folder from the dropdown list on the top right corner;
- Enter a folder by double-clicking it in the online pane;
- Click 🖸 to go to the folder visited previously;
- Click 🖸 to go to the folder visited next;
- Click 🖆 to go to the parent folder.
- 2. Create new online email folders
  - Click on 🖾 button to create a new folder, and specify the folder name;
  - Or, right-click on a blank area in the remote emails pane, select "**New**" from the popup menu.

#### 3. Rename online email folders

Click the email folder to rename, click again or right-click and select "**Rename**" from the popup menu; enter the new name in the name edit box.

#### 4. Delete online emails and folders

Select the emails / folder to delete, click on Button or press "**Delete**" key; select "**Yes**" on the confirmation message box if you want to delete.

#### 5. Browse emails online

DriveHQ server supports browsing emails online. Right click on an email and select the "**View online**" option from the right-click menu to open it in DriveHQ webmail.

# 12.6 Transferring emails, contacts and folders (mailboxes)

DriveHQ Email Manager enables convenient and powerful email transferring between your local email client software (Outlook, Outlook Express or Windows Mail) and DriveHQ online email system.

- You can transfer one or many emails / mailboxes / contacts using Drag-n-Drop;
- You can easily monitor / manage transfer tasks in the task management pane for email / contacts transfers.
- If transfer is interrupted, you can resume from where it was left;
- DriveHQ EmailManager supports data compression, so the upload / download speed usually is much faster than Outlook sends / receives emails.
- DriveHQ EmailManager supports increment upload / download. If the same email exists in the destination folder, the upload / download will be skipped.

#### 1. Upload emails, contacts and folders

- On the local emails pane, select emails and folders to be uploaded (multiple selection using clicks combined with ctrl/shift key is supported)
- On the remote emails pane, select the destination folder; click the arrow select the middle of the two panes to upload emails.
- Or, you can drag & drop the selection in the local pane to the destination folder in the remote pane.
- All the selected emails will be added to the emails transfer task pane, and the first email starts to be transferred.

#### 2. Download emails, contacts and folders.

• On the remote pane, select emails and folders to be downloaded (multiple selection using clicks combined with ctrl/shift key is supported).

- On the local pane, select the destination folder; Click the arrow 🔛 in the middle of the two panes to download emails.
- Or, you can drag & drop the selection in the remote pane to the destination folder in the local pane.
- All the selected emails will be added to the emails transfer task pane, and the first emails starts to be transferred.

#### 3. Monitor, stop, resume, and resume transfer tasks.

The transfer task pane shows the progress information of the pending transfer tasks, including name, source and destination, current transfer progress and transfer speed, and estimated time left.

	Name	Progress	Size	Time	Speed	Status	Local Folder	Server Folder	Mode	^
	🙈 Fw: PhotoE 📃	100 %	36 KB(0 B)	00:00:00	58 KB/s	Transfering	\Personal Folders\Inbox	\Personal Folders\Inbox	Upload	-
•	🙈 RE: PhotoS 📃	100 %	10 KB(0 B)	00:00:01	58 KB/s		\Personal Folders\Inbox			
•	🙈 Re: PhotoS 📃	100 %	15 KB(0 B)	00:00:01			\Personal Folders\Inbox			
•	🙈 Re: PhotoS 📃	100 %	11 KB(0 B)	00:00:01			\Personal Folders\Inbox			
•	🖂 Affiliate ba 📃	100 %	36 KB(0 B)	00:00:01			\Personal Folders\Inbox			-
	🙈 Re: PhotoS 🗖	100.%	7 KB(0 B)	00:00:01	58 KB/s		Personal Folders' Inhov			~

- Click the "Delete" button to delete a single or all the email transfers from the task list;
- Click the "Stop" button to stop a single or all the email transfers in the task list;
- Click the "Resume" button to resume a single or all the stopped email transfer tasks.

# Note: DriveHQ EmailManager only supports upload / download normal emails and contacts. Other types of content, e.g. meeting request emails, system undeliverable emails, will be ignored.

## **12.7** Automatic email backup

DriveHQ EmailManager supports automatic email backup. It doesn't support automatically backup contacts or contact groups. This is because contacts are usually not changed frequently. Users can easily drag and drop contacts to backup online.

Creating an email backup task is very easy. The current version Email Manager only allows one backup task. It supports both real-time backup and scheduled backup. If you want your emails to be backed up as changes occur, then choose Real-time Backup. This might slightly affect your system performance if the amount of data is very large or if it contains a lot of emails. To avoid the problem issue, you can choose Scheduled Backup. Your email folders will be backed up at the scheduled time.

#### 12.7.1 Create email backup task

Launch DriveHQ EmailManager and click the **"Backup"** button. It displays the backup task screen, shown as below:

DriveHQ Email Manager - Step1: Select folders to backup	Name	Unread	Total
<ul> <li>Coccar Enformative Cocc</li> <li>Personal Folders</li> <li>Deleted Items</li> <li>Inbox</li> <li>Outbox</li> <li>Outbox</li> <li>Sent Items</li> <li>Outfor</li> <li>Drafts</li> <li>Drafts</li> <li>Drafts</li> <li>Drafts</li> <li>Drafts</li> <li>Outlook Express</li> </ul>	Personal Folders	0	1103 1
Cancel	Backup Account Setting a	nd Rules	:>> Finish

Select the email folders to backup - uncheck junk / spam / trash / bulk folders

Select the email folders you want to backup which will be backed up to DriveHQ webmail on <u>www.DriveHQ.com/Email/</u>. Usually, you don't need to select trash, deleted, junk, trash, bulk mail folders. After finished, please click on "**Next**". It goes to the "set backup type and schedule" screen as shown below:

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

👔 DriveHQ Email Manager - Backup Settings 🛛 🛛 🔀
Step2: Setup backup
Backup Type
Real-time: Continuously backing up emails and email
Scheduled Backup: Schedule a backup task to be run later
Start the backup task at: 10 : 23
One time only
Daily
🕥 Weekly Select day of week: Sunday 🗨
Monthly Select day of Month:
Valid Date
This task is valid from 2010- 7-19 🗸 to 2099- 1- 1
Cancel Backup Account Setting and Rules < <previous finish<="" td=""></previous>

Set backup type and schedule screen

You can select real-time backup or scheduled backup.

**Real-time:** If you select **Real-time**, the task will backup local email folders to remote email folders on <u>http://www.DriveHQ.com/email/</u> as changes occur.

**Scheduled Backup:** You can set a recurring backup schedule for the backup task. The task can run one-time, daily, weekly or monthly. You must set a schedule if you selected "Scheduled backup". You cannot set a schedule if you selected real-time backup.

If you want to backup your email account setting and email routing rules, you can click on **Backup Account Setting and Rules** button. It will pop up a screenshot as below:



Click on **OK** to start the account settings and email rules backup. It will pop up a message box after finishing the backup, shown as below:



Click on **OK** to confirm it.

Finally, click on **Finish** button to finish creating the backup task.

#### 12.7.2 Manage or Backup Multiple Email Accounts / Emails on Multiple PCs

DriveHQ EmailManager can manage or backup multiple email accounts configured in your Outlook, Outlook Express or Windows Mail. It can also manage and backup emails on multiple computers. This feature is often used to move emails from one computer to another computer or from one email account to another email account.

Emails and folders are grouped by email accounts and PCs so that they won't overwrite or mix with each other, even if you have the same name email folders on different PCs or different email accounts.
#### 12.7.3 Manage email backup task

After you have successfully created the email backup task, you can click on "**Backup**" button to edit the task, delete the task or manually start the backup task (or stop the backup task if it is already running).

👔 DriveHQ EmailManager - Ma	nage Backup		×
Manage Backup: Manage backup email b Cocal Email Root Cocal Emai		Unread O 1	Total 1103
Cancel Delete Backup	Start Backup	-< <previ< td=""><td>ous Next&gt;&gt;</td></previ<>	ous Next>>

Manage email backup task screen

You can add / delete email folders in the backup source; change the backup type / backup schedule. After you have finished editing, Click the **"Save Changes"** button, the changes will be saved.

#### 12.7.3 Restore emails and email folders

Emails backed up online are stored in your DriveHQ webmail account. From DriveHQ EmailManager, you can find them in the remote emails pane. You can also easily access them online at: <u>http://www.drivehq.com/email/</u>.

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🕞 File Edit View	Options Help	Dri	veHQ	Email	Manager			- = ×
Disconnect Backup	Restore	Options	(? Help		View			
0 0 🖻 🖆 🗙 🕄	1				😋 💿 🖆 🗙	2		
Remote Email: 🔞 Remote	Email Root		•		Local Email: 📑 Windo	ws Mail		•
Name Inbox Sent Draft Trash Bulk ContactRootFolder Friends Personal Folders Drafts Sent Items Inbox Inbox Temp	Unread 0 9 0 0 0 0 0 0 42 162 0 0	Totai 0 9 0 0 0 0 0 6 1 0 42 162 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		$\langle \mathbf{P} \rangle$	Name	Unread 0 0 0 0 0 0	1 0 0 0 0 0 0	otal

The screen showing "backed-up emails & folders"

To restore your emails and email folders on the same computer, it is extremely easy. Just click on the "**Restore**" button to restore the whole backup task to the original location. You can also restore a few email folders only. Just uncheck those email folders that you don't want to restore. See the screenshot below for more details. Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Select folders to Restore	estore setting	-	
Remote Email Root	I Subject There are	From	Time 🔺
	Restore Account Setting and	Rules Re	store Cancel

The Restore screen – restore all email folders, or select a few folders only

You also can manually restore your backup task using drag and drop.

If you need to restore emails / folders to a different computer, or if you need to restore emails after you have reinstalled your operating system, then you cannot use the "Restore" button to restore your emails. In this case, you must use "drag and drop" feature to restore your emails / folders.

## 12.8 DriveHQ EmailManager Settings, Options and Subscription

From DriveHQ EmailManager main screen, click on the "Option" button in the toolbar, and the screen "**DriveHQ Email Manager - My Options**" will pop up:

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

🔹 DriveHQ Email Manager - My	Options 🛛 🛛 🛛				
<ul> <li>My Profile</li> <li>Account Balance</li> <li>Change Password</li> <li>My Options</li> <li>Subscription</li> <li>System Options</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Remember my logon info</li> <li>Automatically sign in</li> </ul>				
Save Change Close					

DriveHQ Email Manager "My Options" screen

By default, Email Manager remembers user logon info and automatically signs in. This makes it very convenient for users.

#### Other settings include:

- My Profile: you can view or edit your DriveHQ account profile;
- Account Balance: check your DriveHQ account balance; incl. cash balance, max emails allowed and number of emails in your account;
- Change Password: change your DriveHQ account password.
- Subscription: you can order DriveHQ email backup service from here.

As of June, 2010, DriveHQ Email Backup Service (using DriveHQ EmailManager 3.0) is the only service not included in the main storage subscription service. Group user license

is also not included in the storage subscription service. (This could change in the future, so please visit DriveHQ.com for the latest products and services info.)

DriveHQ EmailManager free email backup service is designed for demo purpose only. It can backup 1000 emails and 50 contacts only. If you need to backup more emails or contacts, you must order a paid Email Backup service plan. For more info, please visit this web page:

http://www.drivehq.com/email/BackupPricing.aspx

- **System Options**: You can disable the application from automatically start when you logon Windows; you can configure it to use SSL for data transfer; you can also configure it to minimize the window (i.e. hide) after automatic start.

# 13. Support for Mac, incl. MacBook, iPad and iPhones, etc.

## 13.1. Services and features that work on both Mac and Windows

DriveHQ.com offers a lot of cloud-based services and features. Most of the features and services are available on Mac. For example:

- DriveHQ.com web-based Online File Storage, Online Sharing, Remote Collaboration, Group Account Admin, etc.
- DriveHQ.com FTP Server Hosting Service;
- DriveHQ.com Email Server Hosting Service;
- DriveHQ Online Backup for Mac.

All web browser based features, FTP Server Hosting service, Email Server Hosting service and Web / File Hosting services work exactly the same as on Windows PC.

## 13.2 DriveHQ Online Backup software for Mac

DriveHQ has a different version of Online Backup software for Mac: DriveHQ Online Backup for Mac 1.6, which is newer than the Windows version software. However, it also has a lot of power features. The main features include:

- Easy setup scheduled backup tasks;
- Supports multiple backup tasks to backup different folders;
- Supports incremental backup to minimize data transfer and improve backup performance;
- Can keep multiple file versions;
- Backup multiple computers with one account or with group accounts

- Easy and reliable restore, through web, FTP / FileManager or Online Backup for Mac Files are also backed up to DriveHQ's state-of-the-art data center facility, which has multiple levels of data redundancy. Compared with in-house backup solution, DriveHQ Online Backup is more flexible and costs much lower. You can backup / access / restore files from anywhere at any time, even if you are on a trip; DriveHQ Online Backup is also more secure and reliable as it is offsite backup; your data can survive even under major disasters. (e.g. fire, flood, earthquake, etc.).

Show All		DriveHQ Online Backup for Mac
<mark>DriveHQ</mark> Or	line	Backup CREE
Create New Backı	ip )	Member List
Delete Backup		My Documents     My Empile
Save Backup		<ul> <li>My Email</li> <li>My Projects</li> </ul>
Run Backup Now.		<ul> <li>Plan of this year</li> </ul>
Source & I	Destinati	tion Schedule Advanced Settings History & Restore
Source: Directory Path:		tion Schedule Advanced Settings History & Restore
Source: Directory Path: Destination:	Please ch	hoose backup directory
Source: Directory Path: Destination: Type:	Please ch	hoose backup directory Choose ver
Source: Directory Path: Destination: Type: Host:	Please ch FTP Serv ftp.Drive	hoose backup directory Choose ver t eHQ.com
Source: Directory Path: Destination: Type: Host: Path:	Please ch FTP Serv ftp.Drive /DriveHC	hoose backup directory Choose ver eHQ.com QData/MACBackupData/Works
Source: Directory Path: Destination: Type: Host: Path:	Please ch FTP Serv ftp.Drive /DriveHC	hoose backup directory Choose ver t eHQ.com

A screenshot of DriveHQ Online Backup for Mac is shown above.

## 13.3. DriveHQ FileManager Alternatives on Mac and other OS platforms

DriveHQ currently doesn't have a Mac version of DriveHQ FileManager; we do plan to release a version for Mac in the future. For now, users can use other free FTP client software, such as

FileZilla, which also supports drag and drop and is very easy to use. The user interface is also similar to DriveHQ FileManager. Certain advanced features are not available in 3<sup>rd</sup> party FTP client software, e.g. Sharing, Publishing, and Folder Synchronization. However, you can simply use DriveHQ.com website for sharing and publishing. For folder synchronization, you will need to download a 3<sup>rd</sup> party FTP folder synchronization application.

FTP is designed to reliably upload / download large amount of data. Most FTP clients support drag and drop files / folders. You can use any FTP client software connecting to DriveHQ FTP Server:

```
FTP.DriveHQ.com (or proFTP.drivehq.com if you have a paid
account).
```

Then use your DriveHQ username / password to logon. The port number is the default FTP port 21. Remote directory can be left empty or you can create any directory on DriveHQ.com as needed. For more info, please visit: <u>http://www.drivehq.com/ftp/</u>, click on FAQ and Expand All.

#### FTP Client software for Mac

You can download DriveHQ FTP Client software for Mac from DriveHQ software download page at:

http://www.drivehq.com/downloads/downloads.aspx

You can scroll down and find Mac FTP client software as shown below. The Finder also supports FTP, but is usually read-only.

#### Fetch (FTP Client)

Fetch is one of the most popular FTP clients on Mac. Fetch 5 includes all the standard features of a modern FTP client with a user interface that is simple and easy-to-use. Fetch can be used to: Publish/manage a website on DriveHQ; Publish images for eBay auction listings; Submit advertisements/photos to newspapers and magazines; Move files between your Macintosh and other computers;

#### Cyberduck FTP Client (Free!)

Cyberduck is a free FTP client with an easy to use interface, integration with external editors and support for many Mac OS X system technologies such as Spotlight, Bonjour, the Keychain and AppleScript.

#### FileZilla FTP Client (Free!)

FileZilla is an excellent free FTP client that is available on many different operating systems. It doesn't have advanced sharing, publishing,

automatic backup and folder synchronization features as offered in DriveHQ client software. FileZilla works very well with ftp.drivehq.com, offers a complete FTP hosting solution.

## 13.4 Support for other devices / OS platforms

DriveHQ website, FTP service, web / file hosting service, email hosting service are all compatible with other operating systems, such as Linux, iPhone, iPad, Windows mobile, Palm etc. with certain limitations based on the OS and device capabilities.

DriveHQ FileManager and DriveHQ Online Backup client software is not available on these platforms, however, usually you can find a good FTP client program on these platforms; you probably can also find FTP based backup software. Also, the DriveHQ.com website, SMTP/POP3/IMAP email services can be used on most OS platforms, smart phones, iPad, etc.

# **15. Enterprise Service and Private Label Service**

## **15.1 About DriveHQ Enterprise Service**

DriveHQ regular premium service is optimized for small businesses, professionals and high-end users. We also have enterprise service which is designed for large businesses.

DriveHQ enterprise service has the following advantages:

- More storage space, up to 10TB max storage space in a single service plan;
- Low unit price, esp. if you need a lot of storage space;
- Bundled with group account service and sub-user licenses; the 2-level group account service can easily support enterprises with over 10,000 users.
- Includes all DriveHQ services and features. (also incl. email hosting and email backup services)
- You can get a custom logon page that is much simpler, and does not have any DriveHQ marketing info; the DriveHQ website logo can also be customized to your company logo;
- You can host custom domain email server, static web server and FTP server;
- For enterprise users with a lot of data, uploading all files could take a very long time. You can ship up to 4 USB disks to DriveHQ; we can upload your files from our data center, which is much faster.

- Higher priority customer support than regular premium service users and free service users.



A sample Custom Logon page – much simpler interface with your own logo

# **Drive Headquarters**<sup>™</sup>

Cloud Storage & Cloud IT Solution 5.0

Conversion Com Show Folder page	. Show folder tree. Online storage, sha	aring, backup, publishing 💶 🗵			
🚱 💿 🗢 🙋 http://www.drivehq 💌 🔯 🍫 🗙 🔽 Bing					
Eile Edit ⊻iew Favorites Tools Help					
🙀 Favorites 🛛 🏉 DriveHQ.com Show Folder page. Show folder tree. 0					
		ervices   Features & Plans   Enterpris			
Your Company Logo	Your Company Logo				
Welcome <u>YourCompanyName</u> !	Group Admin Go back to older v	ersion			
Dp Upload Download	Zip Download Share Publish	New Folder New File Co			
niveHQ Root	DriveHQ Root - Folder Path: \YourUser2\				
🖶 🤮 My Storage	📄 Select 🔍 Search  🐣 Dow	nload All 📑 View 🍪 Optic			
DriveHQData      GroupRead	:	Shared to YourUser2 wi			
🗈 🗔 GroupWrite	<u> ∏ Name</u>	Action Create Time			
🕮 🛅 My Documents	🗖 🛅 <u>test</u>	A 4/17/2009 1:20:2			
My Music	SamplePhoto1.jpg	م 4/17/2009 1:16:5 ▼ ▲			

Custom logo service - bundled with DriveHQ enterprise service for free.

## **15.2 Enterprise Service Pricing and Ordering**

DriveHQ Enterprise Service pricing info is available online at: http://www.drivehq.com/premium/enterprisePricing.aspx

By ordering DriveHQ Enterprise Service, not only you get more features, more storage space, better customer support, but also you save money compared with ordering the bundled services separately. To order DriveHQ Enterprise Service, you can download the order form, fill in the form and sign it, then <u>fax</u> or <u>scan & email</u> it to DriveHQ.

You can also sign up a free DriveHQ account, then logon <u>www.drivehq.com</u> and go to My Account page, click on Deposit to make a payment. You can then email DriveHQ customer support about the service plan you want to subscribe. DriveHQ customer support can help you process the order.

As is the same as regular premium service, enterprise users can pay by credit card, PayPal, business check or bank wire.

## **15.3 Private Label Service**

Private Label Service is also known as "White Label Service"; it means DriveHQ offers the backend services and technologies; however, on the front-end, the service is re-branded as your company's service. Thus to your users, the service appears to be operated by your own company.

Private label service can be very useful for large organizations where brand name recognition is very important. It may also be necessary for some big resellers.

However, private label service has some disadvantages and is no longer recommended. The main disadvantages include:

- High start-up cost. This is because DriveHQ must setup a new website for the private label website, which requires a different web server and a different database schema. Not only it increases the hardware cost, but also it increases long-term maintenance cost.
- It usually requires significant amount of website & software customization work. The cost of such work usually cannot be shared by other enterprise customers.

Because of these, DriveHQ is working on a new "Reseller Model", which will allow more customization than the current "custom logo and logon page" service at the same price.

If you are interested in a customized service, please contact DriveHQ sales. You need to tell how many users will use the service and how much storage you will need after 12 months. Also please tell us your project timeline and how much customization you want. DriveHQ sales will reply your emails very quickly.

# 16. Information for IT Managers, IT Consultants, Resellers and Small Business owners

While DriveHQ offers free basic service and low-cost subscription plans, our service is designed for businesses and high-end users.

If you are an IT manager, IT consultant, reseller or a small business owner, you will find our service extremely valuable to your business, why?

- DriveHQ offers a comprehensive set of remote storage and hosting services and features, incl. Online Storage & Sharing, Online Backup, FTP Server Hosting, Email Hosting, Web / File Hosting, Remote Collaboration, Remote Folder Synchronization services. It is a one-stop shop for multiple cloud-based services. You can save cost on Remote File Server, FTP Server, Offsite Backup, Email Server, Web server and Online Collaborations.
- **DriveHQ offers top-quality user group management tools.** IT managers, or any small business owners, can easily create / manage sub-users and sub-groups, assign different

user roles, create folders and share different folders to different users / groups / subgroups with different levels of access rights. DriveHQ service can make

- DriveHQ cloud-based system works better than your own system.
  - DriveHQ remote file server supports secure remote file access, remote file sharing among internal employees and external clients. No expensive and complicated VPN solution is needed.
  - DriveHQ Remote Offsite Backup service works anywhere, supports any number of computers; offsite backup is the only solution that can protect your data against major disasters, such as fire, earthquake, flood, etc.
  - DriveHQ FTP server hosting service is a full-feature FTP Server Hosting service, which has almost all regular FTP server features, plus a lot more advanced features that are only available on DriveHQ. It is also seamlessly integrated with DriveHQ.com web-based services.
  - DriveHQ Email Hosting service is designed for businesses to host private domain business email accounts. It has a lot of advanced features, incl. group address book, mailing list, spam filters, auto reply and auto-forward, etc.
  - DriveHQ system is colocated with Hurricane Electric, one of the largest colocation service provider. The facility has 24x7 onsite security, surveillance cameras, redundant power supply and redundant network connections.
  - DriveHQ system has full / multiple levels of redundancies. There is no single point of failure. The DriveHQ support team monitors the system 24x7; data is automatically backed up / mirrored. Compared with self-hosted solution, this can save you a lot of effort in system maintenance and service monitoring. It also saves you a lot of cost in maintaining a backup system.

# In short, DriveHQ services can extend or replace your server capabilities, save you a lot of cost.

### For IT Managers:

You can easily convince your senior manager(s) about the benefits of using DriveHQ.com cloud-based services:

- It saves cost on hardware, software and hosting;
- It makes things much easier on system maintenance and management;
- It makes your IT service available from anywhere, incl. sharing and collaboration with your clients;
- It makes your system more secure and reliable;
- Using Group Admin tool, the group administrator user has full control over everything; as the IT manager, you can easily support all your users' needs online, it is even easier than your local system.

#### For IT Consultants / Resellers

A lot of IT consultants, IT service providers resell DriveHQ services. With over 1 million registered customers, many of them business customers, DriveHQ has developed extremely efficient business model and partnership models.

#### Why Partner with DriveHQ?

In short, because DriveHQ offers high-end enterprise-class services that create a lot of value and save a lot of cost for customers. Therefore, more customers are willing to pay for the services.

Cloud storage, server hosting and computing services are fast growing markets. It is also very competitive. There are a lot of cheap / free service providers; however, such cheap services have a very low profit margin. Most of them cannot generate any profit for themselves, not to mention their partners. On the other hand, DriveHQ has created a long-term viable business model for partners. There are a lot of IT consultants and small service firms resell our services to their clients. It has created a win-win business scenario.

The benefits of partnering with our services incl.:

- Increase your service offering, differentiate from your competitors:
  - DriveHQ offers a lot of features and services, which can dramatically increase your service offerings; many of them are essential to your business customer's IT needs.
- Improve your service quality:
  - DriveHQ offers high-quality high-end services that have a very high customer satisfaction ratio; if you were to offer such services yourself, your product and service quality is unlikely to match our level.
- Save your cost; lower your risk:
  - If you offer similar services yourself, the cost is generally more than 20 times higher. By partnering with DriveHQ, you can start reselling our services in minutes. You don't need to invest in hardware, software and hosting; all you need is to sign up DriveHQ.com and getting familiar with our services / features.
- Boost your service revenue:
  - By partnering with DriveHQ, you can get into the fast-growing lucrative online backup, online storage and FTP hosting service business with a proven

profit model. This compares sharply with many other companies that offer free / cheap services with no profit model.

 Connect customers more closely with an online service, sell more software, hardware or services;

#### Who should partner with DriveHQ?

- Online Service Providers:
- ISPs; telecom and network service providers;
- Service providers in vertical markets serving:
  - Accounting Firms;
  - Law firms;
  - Medical clinics;
  - Real estate agents and appraisers;
  - Photographers and design firms;
  - Non-profit organizations and educational institutes, etc.
  - Service providers for specific regions or languages;
- Software developers or publishers;
- Digital device manufacturers, vendors, OEMs, etc.
- IT consulting firms and solution providers;

#### **Success Stories**

DriveHQ has over 1 million registered users, incl. 10s of thousands of businesses. By using our services, these businesses have achieved big cost saving in hardware, software and system maintenance costs. DriveHQ has some very large companies using our services or reselling our services. We also have a lot more users selling our group account / enterprise service. For more info, please visit our <u>Customer Testimonials</u> page, or contact <u>bizdev@drivehq.com</u>.

#### Partership / Reseller Models

DriveHQ has different partnership programs for different companies and individuals. These programs make it extremely easy to partner with DriveHQ, while offering great flexibility and extensibility.

- Co-branded or Private-label Service
- Quick Business Partnership Program
- OEM Partnership
- Group Service Reseller Program (Recommended!)
- Regular Affiliate Program

#### **Co-branded or Private-label Service**

DriveHQ Co-branded or Private-label Service is designed for companies with large existing user base or big marketing channels. Potential companies include:



Internet service companies;

Broadband ISPs, telecom and network service providers;

Service providers in vertical markets; (e.g. accounting, legal, medical, IT, real estates, education, etc.)

Service providers for specific regions or languages;

Software developers, publishers, digital device vendors, etc.

#### **Business model:**

**Co-branded** / **private label service is no longer recommended**. DriveHQ will launch a new partnership model, which will allow resellers to customize their website / services.

Co-branded or Private-label customer will pay DriveHQ an initial setup fee plus one-time customization charge. After the service is launched, customer shall pay DriveHQ based on storage usage and number of users. Customer can customize the service logo, pricing, UI themes, email templates, client software UI; hide certain features, etc. Customer can leverage on DriveHQ's transaction and billing system, or use their own existing billing systems. Customer owns the users unless the service is discontinued.

DriveHQ also offers system integration service and on-demand consulting service at a very low rate. We have standardized the service. Usually a co-branded or private-label service can be launched in 4 to 10 weeks, dependent on the amount of customization.



#### Quick Business Partnership Program (bundle DriveHQ software / services at no charge)

Quick Business Partnership Program is designed for small businesses. Small businesses can bundle the free version of DriveHQ's client applications and online services. No contract is required. You can freely distribute / bundle DriveHQ client software with your own software, hardware, CDs/DVDs/Books/Magazines or services; you can integrate with DriveHQ online storage, backup and sharing services and FTP / Email hosting services. There are no setup fees and service charges. You can start offering high-end DriveHQ software and services to your customers in no time.

#### **Business Model:**

The partnership will be win-win and is open to discussions. DriveHQ can supply necessary API documentations to partners so that partners can integrate or offer DriveHQ service from their software, service, website or hardware device, etc. DriveHQ also supports many standard APIs / Protocols such as HTTP/HTTPS/FTP/SMTP, etc.

If the partner requires no customization from DriveHQ, then partner is entitled to the standard affiliate commission, which pays up to 30% of net revenue;

If the partner requires DriveHQ to customize any web pages or logos, then the affiliate commission will be deducted with DriveHQ service charges.

Partners have the right to upgrade the partnership to Co-branded or Private-label Service at any time.

#### OEM Partnership - It pays to bundle DriveHQ software and services



If you are a hardware device manufacturer, you will find DriveHO software and services can dramatically enhance your product value. DriveHQ service can closely connect your customers with your hardware, and thus connect your company with your customers, which increases your customer loyalty to your products and help you generate more sales. You could also get revenue share from DriveHQ. In the past, most digital devices (digital cameras, camcorders, webcams) have bundled desktop photo or video software. In the rapidly changing digital media industry, most consumers now demand for online sharing and publishing digital contents. The future of digital devices and multimedia software is to connect people. DriveHQ offers great online storage and sharing services; we also have high-quality web-based client software that delivers much higher value than traditional desktop software.

#### **Business Model:**

Most software companies charge OEMs for bundling their software with OEM's hardware devices. DriveHQ offers high-quality, high-end software for free bundling. Moreover, we might pay OEMs for bundling our software!

# **For Digital Camera, Camcorder, WebCam and Digital Frame manufacturers:** Photo or video applications are less useful today as the operating system has already provided very good support for multimedia files. (Bundling DriveHQ software and services can create a lot of new values: )

- 1. Sharing large multimedia files online with friends and relatives remotely. DriveHQ FileManager is a great application for sharing digital contents online. Users can drag and drop files, preview files; share and publish files online.
- 2. Many consumers also need a secure backup solution to backup their digital files online. DriveHQ Online Backup can automatically backup files in real-time or in scheduled time.
- 3. Many consumers and businesses also need FTP service to share digital contents with their friends or customers;

#### For USB storage device manufacturers:

While extremely portable and is much faster than online storage, USB storage has inherent drawbacks of:

- 1. Cannot access files remotely;
- 2. Can only be accessed from one PC at one time;
- 3. Cannot share or collaborate with other people;
- 4. Is less reliable and less secure than online storage. If you lose a USB key, other people could get access to all your data.
- 5. Requires plug and un-plug which is not convenient.

DriveHQ FileManager client software extends the USB storage feature to the Internet. You can access your files from anywhere at any time without needing to carry a USB storage. You can share your files and set access rights so that different people can access different folders only. Online Storage and Local USB storage can be combined to deliver much higher value to consumers.

#### For PC manufacturers:

The industry trend is online storage will become more and more popular and important. Many users now have a strong need to upload files to online storage, share files with remote friends, colleagues or clients. CD/DVD drives have become less important from this perspective. DriveHQ FileManager and DriveHQ Desktop Express makes remote online storage as easy as local drives; it is also as reliable and secure as your local drives. Bundling DriveHQ FileManager not only offers extra storage to your customers, but also offers them a remote file server so that they can easily share and collaborate with other people.

Users can automatically synchronize local folders with remote folders on DriveHQ server; they can also schedule automatic backup tasks to protect their important files.

#### For PDA and Smart Phone manufacturers:

Consider bundling DriveHQ FTP service, SMTP / POP3 / IMAP email service.

#### **Group Service Reseller Program**

#### (Buy large amount of storage at whole-sale price; resell at a much higher retail price)

Group Service Reseller Program is designed for IT Consultants, solution providers, system integrators and small resellers. It is extremely easy to start with little up-front cost. Basically, you can order DriveHQ storage space and user licenses online, then resell sub-user accounts / sub-groups and storage space to your customers. You can resell the service at the same DriveHQ service price, or at a lower price to better attract your customers.

To help resellers to sell more services, DriveHQ offers "Custom Logo and Landing Page" service to Group Service Resellers for free (A value of \$149.99/year). Resellers can have a custom logon (or landing) page as: http://USERNAME.drivehq.com/. After login, the DriveHQ website logo will be changed to the reseller's logo.

Resellers usually bill their customers directly. A lot of resellers already offer other services to their customers. So DriveHQ services can be bundled with their existing services. This offers the best flexibility in service pricing. Resellers are free to price the service at a lower or higher price than DriveHQ. DriveHQ transaction / billing service can also be used if the reseller cannot bill its customers directly.

By ordering large amount of storage space at the whole-sale price, you can resell our service to individual users or small business users with a very good profit margin, e.g.

If you order 100GB, 20-user group account service, you pay:

\$699.99 + 119.99 = \$819.98.

If you resell the service to 20 users for 5GB each, then you can make:

\$79.99 x 20 = \$1599.8

You can start with a low subscription and upgrade your max storage / group user licenses at any time later without losing un-used service credit.

If you can resell our service to a lot of customers, please contact DriveHQ sales for more discount. In general,

- If you can resell to 3 customers or 100GB, we will offer you 10% off.

- If you can resell 200GB, we will offer you 20% off;

- If you can resell 300GB, we will offer you 25% off;

- If you can resell 500GB or more, we will offer you 30% off.

As you can see, if you resell to a lot of users, then your net profit margin can reach as much as 70%, which is much higher than DriveHQ, and certainly much higher than if you setup your own service.

#### **Regular Affiliate Program**

DriveHQ affiliate program is designed for any individuals or companies who can refer or promote DriveHQ services. DriveHQ designed sophisticated affiliate tracking algorithms. If anybody visits DriveHQ.com with your referalID, then if the user signs up DriveHQ.com in 4 months, this user is marked as referred by you. You will receive a generous up to 30% commission payment. Below is the commission rate table. Please note the commission rate might change from time to time. Please visit DriveHQ.com website for more up-to-date info.

Monthly Sales	Commission Rate
Less than \$100	15%
\$100 to \$399	20%
\$400 to \$999	25%
\$1000 and beyond	30%

Commission Rates for Regular Affiliate Program:

**Commission for Reselling Group Account Service:** 

You don't get commission for reselling Group Account Service. This is because the partnership model itself allows for a very high profit margin. For example:

If you resell "100GB Group Account service" to 20 customers, you pay DriveHQ \$699.99 (Storage) + \$119.99 (user licenses) per year; Since DriveHQ price for 5GB is \$79.99/year, your net profit will be about:  $80 \times 20 - 700 - 20 \times 6 = 8780$ .

Since you don't have network operational cost, your net profit margin could be very high. Also, some IT firms and consultants provide additional support to their clients, e.g. onsite setup, phone support, trouble shooting, etc. They can charge a higher price than DriveHQ's regular price. For example, you can charge \$100/year for 5GB service if you can justify the additional value you put in.

#### Commission for co-branded or private-label service:

You don't get commission for these partnership programs. These programs have a very different profit model for you. Please contact bizdev@drivehq.com for more info. Payment:

#### How do I receive affiliate program payment

You can request a PayPal payment when your commission reaches \$50.

#### DriveHQ server / client software licensing, service APIs / SDKs and customization service

DriveHQ has developed great technologies and products; we are committed to help other companies develop customized solutions, products or services that are tailored for the specific company or market. DriveHQ software / website is designed with easily customizable and localizable GUI skins and resource files. It is also built with independent components such that you can easily choose a sub-set of features.

DriveHQ has a complete set of software development kits (SDKs), APIs and documentations. We have developed highly efficient proprietary upload / download APIs; we also support open standard based APIs such as FTP, HTTP, SMTP, POP3 and IMAP. If you are interested in our APIs, please send an email to DriveHQ BizDev. You can also use the standard FTP API to integrate with DriveHQ online storage.

DriveHQ client software / service can be tailored, integrated, bundled or customized to meet your business needs.